

You have three options: **Format**, to provide a quick format with no checks for bad blocks; **Check**, which is slower but checks the hard drive for bad blocks; and **No**, to bypass formatting the partition. Choose **Check** and then **OK** to format this partition.

**NOTE** Checking for bad spots on your hard drive probably isn't necessary for newer (that is, IDE) drives, because the drives take care of remapping bad spots. ■

Next, the Setup program asks about inode density. Inodes are explained in Chapter 15, "Understanding the File and Directory System," but basically you need one inode for each file on your Linux system. If you're going to have many small files, you need many inodes. The Setup program displays the following screen:

```
SELECT INODE DENSITY
```

```
Ext2fs default to one inode per 4096 bytes of drive space. If you're
going to have many small files on your drive, then you may need more
inodes (one is used for each file entry). You can change the density
to one inode per 4096 bytes, or even per 1024 bytes. Select '2048' or
'1024', or just hit enter to accept the default of 4096 bytes.
```

```
NOTE: If you are going to run from CD using a small (<60MB) partition,
use 1024 to be safe. Each link uses an inode and it's easy to run out
of space.
```

► See "Directories and Physical Disks," p. 291

Select the second entry, 4096, and choose **OK**. The Setup program then displays an information screen indicating the formatting choices you've made.

### CAUTION

Watch the drive in-use light. Don't press any keys until the program displays the next screen with an option you can select. If you press any keys during an operation, the Slackware installation program will use these keys as your next selection when the next screen appears. Thus, you may inadvertently make a selection you didn't mean to make.

Next, if Setup detects any DOS or OS/2 High Performance File System (HPFS) partitions, Setup asks whether you want to make these partitions visible to Linux. If you have any such partitions on your drive, answering yes is a good idea because you can access the files on these partitions from Linux. Make your choice (yes or no) to continue.

If you choose yes, the **CHOOSE PARTITION** screen appears, listing the various partitions you can select. In the entry box, type the name of the partition you want to make visible to Linux and press <Return>. If you have more than one partition available, the Setup program continues to ask for a choice until you enter <q>.

After you enter the name, Setup asks for a place in the directory tree to mount the partition. What this means is that the entire partition is accessed as though it were a subdirectory. You must specify where this subdirectory starts. The following information appears:

#### SELECT MOUNT POINT

Now this new partition must be mounted somewhere in your directory tree. Please enter the directory under which you would like to put it. For instance, you might want to reply /dosc, /dosd, or something like that.  
NOTE: This partition won't actually be mounted until you reboot.

Where would you like to mount /dev/hda1?

In the entry box, enter the directory where you want to mount the partition. If this is a DOS partition, use /dosc for drive C, /dosd for drive D, and so on. If you're mounting an OS/2 partition, you can respond with /os2c, /os2d, and so on. Also, make sure that you specify the correct slash mark in directory names—/ (forward), not the DOS backslash (\).

After entering the mount point, the Setup program displays an information screen called CURRENT DOS/HPFS STATUS to let you know which partitions will be mounted. After dismissing this screen by choosing OK, you're returned to the CHOOSE PARTITION screen.

If you have other partitions to mount, you can repeat the preceding procedure until all desired partitions are mounted. When all are processed, press <q> to move on to the next phase of installation, selecting what media to install from.

## Choosing from Where to Install Linux

After formatting and mounting your directories, the Setup program asks you to continue with installation with the SOURCE selection. This selection lets you pick from where you'll install the Slackware distribution. If you're using the accompanying CD-ROM, that choice is CD-ROM. If you have the distribution on floppies, you use the floppy drive to install. Choose yes to display the SOURCE MEDIA SELECTION screen:

#### SOURCE MEDIA SELECTION

Where do you plan to install Slackware Linux from?

- 1 Install from a hard drive partition
- 2 Install from floppy disks
- 3 Install via NFS
- 4 Install from a pre-mounted directory
- 5 Install from CD-ROM

If you're using the CD-ROM, select choice number 5 and choose OK, which displays the Installing from CD-ROM screen:

#### INSTALLING FROM CD-ROM

In order to install Slackware from a CD-ROM, it must contain the distribution arranged beneath a source directory in the same way as if you were to install it from a hard drive or NFS. The source directory must contain subdirectories for each floppy disk. Your CD-ROM should be compatible with this format if it contains a mirror of the Slackware FTP site.

What type of CD-ROM drive do you have?

```

1   SCSI [/dev/scd0 or /dev/scd1]
2   Sony CDU31A [/dev/sonycd]
3   Sony 535 [/dev/cdu535]
4   Mitsumi [/dev/mcd]
5   Sound Blaster Pro (Panasonic) [dev/sbpcd]

```

Select your CD-ROM drive from those provided and choose OK.

**NOTE** If you have problems getting the installation program to detect your CD-ROM, you may have to abort the installation and create a new root disk with another kernel. See The CDRUM-HOWTO in the /doc/HOWTO directory for more information on using CD-ROMs. ■

You now need to look up the source directory you saved in the section “Repartitioning the Drive” earlier in this chapter. The Setup program displays the SELECT SOURCE DIRECTORY screen.

**NOTE** The following screens may appear differently because Linux changes so rapidly. Every effort has been made to assure that this book is in step with the accompanying CD-ROMs, but this isn’t always possible. ■

#### SELECT SOURCE DIRECTORY

Now we need to know which directory on the CD contains the Slackware sources. This location may vary depending on the cd you have. There are default selections for the Slackware Professional CD (including an option to run mostly from the CD), InfoMagic CD, TransAmeritech CD, and the Linux Quarterly CD-ROM. There may be other directories containing other versions - enter a custom directory name if you like. Which option would you like?

If you’re using the accompanying Slackware CD-ROM, immediately select the type of install—slackware, slaktest, and so on. Make your selection and continue. The next screen asks you to pick the packages to install on your system.

**NOTE** If you enter the wrong directory or don’t remember the directory name, the Setup program alerts you and prompts for the correct directory name. If you’re using the accompanying CD-ROM, the /slackware directory is the correct directory on the CD-ROM. If you’re using another installation media or CD-ROM and forgot the directory name, you need to exit Setup and look on the media to find the directory. You can usually recognize the directory structure because the subdirectories have names similar to the package names—for example, /a, /ap, /oop, and so on. ■

## Selecting the Series to Install

After you specify the installation media and source directory, the Setup program displays the SERIES SELECTION screen:

```
SERIES SELECTION
```

Use the spacebar to select the disk sets you wish to install. You can use the UP/DOWN arrows to see all the possible choices. Press the ENTER key when you are finished. If you need to install a disk set that is not listed here, check the box for custom additional disk sets.

```
CUS  Also prompt for CUSTOM disk sets
A    Base Linux system
AP   Various Applications that do not need X
D    Program development (C, C++, Lisp, Perl, etc)
E    GNU Emacs
F    FAQ lists, HOWTO documentation
K    Kernel sources
N    Networking (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News)
Q    Extra Linux kernels with UMSDOS/non-SCSI CD drivers
T    TeX
TCL  Tcl/Tk/TclX, Tcl language, and Tk toolkit for X
X    XFree-86 2.1.1 X Window System
XAP  X Applications
XD   XFree-86 2.1.1 X11 Server Development System
XV   XView 3.2 release 4. (OpenLook window Manager, apps)
Y    Games (that do not require X)
```

Simply move through the list with the arrow keys and mark the desired packages with the space bar. When you make a selection with the space bar, an x appears next to the selection. When you've made all your selections, press <Return> to continue.

Your selections are based on personal preference and the type of hardware you have—that is, if you don't have the hardware to run XFree86, you shouldn't install the packages that require X (iv, x, xap, xd, and xv). You must install package A, the base Linux system. Also, if you're interested in programming, you should install the various programming packages, such as d, oop, tc1, and xd. If you aren't interested in programming, you really don't need these packages. If you want to access the Internet, you want to install package n. Installing the f package, which contains FAQ lists and HOWTO documentation, is strongly recommended, because the package contains a wealth of information you'll need about Linux.

For each package you select, you're led through a series of screens for each package, and each package has programs that it must add, programs that it highly recommends you add, and programs you can skip. Simply follow the instructions on each screen to install the system. For this example, you install the following packages: a, ap, d, e, f, n, t, tc1, x, xap, and y.

After you select the desired packages, choose OK to continue. A simple screen appears telling you that you're about to enter the INSTALL section and that if you haven't made all the appropriate selections, you're returned to the main selection menu. Choose yes to continue with the Setup process.

## Installing Your Selections

The Setup program next prompts you for the type of prompting you want to have while Setup goes through each package, installing programs. Each package contains a set of tagfiles that indicate how the file should be treated. For a first-time install, select the HELP mode indicated in the SELECT PROMPTING MODE screen, to help you decide which mode to use.

**SELECT PROMPTING MODE**

Now you must select which type of prompting you would like to use while installing your software packages. If you're not sure which to use, read the help file.

Which type of prompting would you like to use?

```
Normal  Use the default tagfiles
Custom  Use custom tagfiles in the package directories
Path    Use tagfiles in the subdirectories of a custom path
None    Use no tagfiles - install everything
HELP    Read the prompt mode help file
```

After reading the HELP file, select the Normal prompting mode and choose OK. Then choose INSTALL.

**N O T E** The HELP file indicates a Prompting mode, but as you can see from the menu selections, there's no such item. Normal is the closest matching item, which is why you should use that selection for the installation procedure. ■

At this point, the Setup program is on autopilot and goes through each package you selected earlier to install the various programs. Programs marked as ADD in the tagfiles are automatically added. Setup displays a screen indicating what package it's installing and a brief message about what the package is. You can't stop the Setup program from installing a program marked as ADD in the tagfile.

When the Setup program comes across a program marked as OPT, REC, or SKIP, it displays a screen telling you what it's about to install, whether it's recommended that you install the program, how much space is required to install the program, and then a list of choices. The choices—accessible with the arrow keys—are usually yes, no, or an option to abort the entire program. Usually, the default selection is yes, `install package xxx`, where `xxx` is the name of the package being installed.

**N O T E** Be careful with your answers. If you make an incorrect choice, you can't go back and change that choice. If you accidentally install a package you didn't want, things aren't so bad; you may lose some disk space and gain another program to experiment with. However, if you don't install a package you need, the best you can do is write down the missed package and then later run `pkgtool`, explained in Chapter 13, "Upgrading and Installing Software," to install the desired package. You can also abort the current installation and start over, but that's a rather harsh and time-consuming option.

▶ See "Using `pkgtool`," p. 253 ■

## Configuring Your System

The Setup program has finished loading all the software components you specified. Now it must configure your system. The Setup program displays

**CONFIGURE YOUR SYSTEM**

Now it's time to configure your Linux system. If this is a new system, you must configure it now or it will not boot correctly. Otherwise, you can back out to the main menu if you're sure you want to skip this step. If you've installed a new kernel image, it's important to reconfigure your system so that you can install LILO (the Linux Loader) or create a bootdisk using the new kernel. Do you want to move on to the CONFIGURE option?

Because this is your first time through, you need to configure your system. Choose yes to continue. The next screen asks you to make a boot disk. You should create a boot disk, even if you use LILO. The screen displayed is as follows:

**MAKE BOOT DISK**

It is HIGHLY recommended that you make a standard boot disk for your Linux system at this time. Such a disk can be very handy if LILO is ever improperly installed. Since the boot disk will contain a kernel that is independent of LILO and the kernel on your hard drive, you'll still be able to use it to boot your system no matter what you do to LILO or your hard drive kernel. Would you like to make a standard boot disk?

Be sure to have a formatted floppy ready, choose yes, and press <Return>. Setup displays the BOOT DISK CREATION screen. Simply put the formatted floppy into the drive and choose yes to create the boot disk. If you skip boot disk creation, Setup displays this warning message:

**SKIPPED BOOT DISK CREATION**

Boot disk creation skipped. I hope you already have a boot disk. If you don't, you have to install LILO if you haven't already, or you'll have a hard time booting your machine. :^)

It's highly recommended that you create a boot disk. If anything goes wrong with the preceding installation or the following configuration—especially when installing the Linux Loader, LILO—you'll have an extremely hard time booting your system. In fact, you should also make a boot disk for any other operating systems you may have resident on your system. Typically, with a boot disk you can boot from a floppy if things go bad and correct the problem.

## Configuring Your Modem

Next, Setup asks you to configure a modem. You should do this now, even if you don't plan to use a modem at this time. Setup displays the following screen if you want to configure your modem:

**MODEM CONFIGURATION**

This part of the configuration process will create a link in /dev from your callout device (cua0, cua1, cua2, cua3) to /dev/modem. You can change this link later if you put your modem on a different port.

Choose yes to continue. Next, you need to specify the serial port that your modem is hooked to. You do this via the SELECT CALLOUT DEVICE screen. The items cua0-3 represent your

serial ports, with `cua0` representing COM1, `cua1` being COM2, and so on. Select the appropriate COM port and then choose OK.

## Configuring the Mouse

You next go through a similar process to configure your mouse. If you have a mouse with your system, you should go ahead and configure it at this time. Choose yes from the MOUSE CONFIGURATION screen to continue. You're then presented with a screen containing six selections. If you have a mouse that's Microsoft-compatible and not listed in the choices in Table 4.10, you can select option 1 and have a good chance of your mouse working.

**Table 4.10 Mouse Types Supported by Linux**

| Option | Description                                     |
|--------|---|
| 1      | Microsoft-compatible serial mouse               |
| 2      | C&T 82C710 or PS/2 style mouse (auxiliary port) |
| 3      | Logitech bus mouse                              |
| 4      | ATI XL bus mouse                                |
| 5      | Microsoft bus mouse                             |
| 6      | Mouse Systems serial mouse                      |

If you select a mouse that requires a serial port, Setup requires you to specify the port. Like modems, Linux refers to the serial ports with a different name than COM1, COM2, and so on. Linux refers to the ports as `ttyS0` through `ttyS3`. Select the appropriate serial port from the SELECT SERIAL PORT screen and then choose OK to continue with the installation.

## Configuring Linux to Use *ftape*

Setup detects whether you loaded the `ftape` package and asks whether you want to start the program as soon as Linux boots. It doesn't hurt to start the program at boot time, so if you loaded the `ftape` package, you should have Setup start the program at boot time. Choose yes from the FTAPE CONFIGURATION screen to continue.

## Configuring Your Modem's Baud Rate

Next, if you installed the `gp9600` package, the Setup program displays the SET YOUR MODEM SPEED screen. Simply select the appropriate baud rate and choose OK. If you don't see a rate high enough for your modem needs, you can later use the `setserial` program to set the baud rate to whatever value you require.

## Installing LILO

LILO stands for the Linux LOader. LILO is a program executed at system startup that lets you choose which operating system is used to boot the computer. You can use LILO to boot several different operating systems, such as Linux and MS-DOS. With LILO, you also can specify a default operating system to boot and a default time limit before it boots that system. For example, if you had MS-DOS and Linux on your computer, you can configure LILO to boot either one. You could then tell LILO to boot MS-DOS if no one intervenes after 30 seconds. Before that 30 seconds is up, however, a user can specify another operating system to boot instead of the default. You can press the <Ctrl>, <Alt>, or <Shift> keys to stop the timed process. Press <Tab> to get a list of operating systems LILO can boot.

You specify all this information while configuring LILO. Although you can directly edit the `lilo.conf` file located in the `/etc` directory, the LILO INSTALLATION screen provides a better interface for editing the file.

After you configure your system, Setup lets you install LILO. Setup displays

### LILO INSTALLATION

LILO (the Linux Loader) allows you to boot Linux from your hard drive. To install, you make a new LILO configuration file by creating a new header and then adding at least one bootable partition to the file. Once you've done this, you can select the install option. Alternately, if you already have an `/etc/lilo.cfg`, you may reinstall using that. If you make a mistake, you can always start over by choosing 'Begin'. Which Option would you like?

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| Begin   | Start LILO configuration with a new LILO header          |
| Linux   | Add a Linux partition to the LILO config file            |
| OS/2    | Add an OS/2 partition to the LILO config file            |
| DOS     | Add a DOS partition to the LILO config file              |
| Install | Install LILO   |
| Recycle | Reinstall LILO using the existing <code>lilo.conf</code> |
| Skip    | Skip LILO installation and exit this menu                |
| View    | View your current <code>/etc/lilo.cfg</code>             |
| Help    | Read the Linux Loader Help file                          |

To begin, you should select the Help option to read the help file. After reading the help file, you should start at the beginning—the Begin option. If you don't want to install LILO at this time but instead want to use a boot floppy, you can select the Skip menu option.

### CAUTION

If you skip installing LILO, you must have a bootable floppy. If you skipped creating a boot floppy earlier, you should install LILO or, when back at the main menu, re-enter the configuration selection and create a boot floppy. If you do leave Setup without a way to boot your system, you're forced to configure your system at a later time with the boot and root disks you originally created.



## Configuring the Kernel with the *append=* Parameter

You have the option to pass the Linux kernel command-line flags to configure the kernel before execution begins. The extra flags might be needed with certain SCSI hard drives and IBM motherboards. LILO allows you to specify these command-line flags via the *append=* parameter. If you need to pass any command-line parameters, enter them in the edit box of the displayed screen. If you have no parameters to pass, press <Return> to continue.

## Setting a Target Location

Next, you must choose where to place the LILO program. You can place the program in the master boot record of your first hard drive, in what's called the *superblock* of your root Linux partition, or on a floppy disk. If you choose the Floppy Disk option, you need to place a formatted floppy in the drive. You should probably use the master boot record for LILO.

## Setting the Delay Option

The next screen lets you set the amount of time LILO waits before booting the default operating system. Select one of the following options and then choose OK:

| Option  | Description   |
|---------|---|
| None    | Don't wait at all—boot straight into the first operating system |
| 5       | 5 seconds   |
| 30      | 30 seconds  |
| Forever | Present a prompt and wait until a choice is made                |

## Choosing Your Default Operating System and Adding All Partitions

When you return to the main LILO INSTALLATION screen, you must choose your default operating system. This is the first operating system located in the *lilo.conf* file. If you want Linux to be the default operating system, for example, you should select the Linux menu option; if you want MS-DOS to be the default, select the DOS menu option.

After you select the default OS, the installation program presents a screen consisting of all the possible partitions that you can boot from. Enter the name of the partition just as it appears under the Device column heading on the SELECT XXX PARTITION, where XXX indicates the type of partition you're using. For example, if you had selected DOS as your default operating system, the screen reads SELECT DOS PARTITION and displays all available bootable DOS partitions. After you enter the correct device name, choose OK to continue.

Next, you must choose a short name to help identify the operating system when someone presses the <Tab> key at the LILO prompt. This is the name a user must enter to select that operating system as the boot operating system from LILO. Examples of names are DOS, LINUX, OS/2, and so on. The name must be a single word.

After selecting your default operating system, you can continue to add various operating systems to LILO by using the Linux, OS/2, and DOS menu options. Just remember to add Linux.

After you add all the appropriate operating system partitions, you should use the View option to examine your current `/etc/lilo.conf` file. For this example, assume that you've specified DOS as the default operating system and have added an entry for Linux. You also specified a 30-second delay before booting into DOS. In that case, your `lilo.conf` file looks like

```
# LILO configuration file
# generated by 'liloconfig'
#
# Start LILO global section
boot = /dev/hda
#compact          # faster, but won't work on all systems.
delay = 300
vga = normal      # force sane state
ramdisk = 0       # paranoia setting
# End LILO global section
# Linux bootable partition config begins
image = /vmlinuz
root = /dev/hda4
label = linux
# Linux bootable partition config ends
# DOS bootable partition config begins
other = /dev/hda1
label = dos
table = /dev/hda
# DOS bootable partition config ends
```

After you add all the needed partitions, select the Install option to configure LILO.

## Uninstalling LILO

If you're running LILO version 0.14 or newer, you can uninstall LILO with the following command:

```
opus:~# lilo -u
```

If you have a previous version, you must remove or disable LILO from its primary partition. You can use Linux's or MS-DOS's `FDISK` program to make another partition active.

If you placed LILO within the MBR (master boot record), you must replace it with another MBR from another operating system. With MS-DOS 5.0 or above, the command

```
c:\>fdisk /mbr
```

restores the MS-DOS MBR.

When LILO is removed from the active partition or the MBR, you're free to remove the files from `/etc/lilo`.

► See "Removing Files or Directories," p. 307

**Configuring Your Network** Next, Setup allows you to configure your network. You may not have all the information available yet, but go ahead and configure as much as possible. The Setup program tries to configure your system, but if it can't (which is very likely the first time),

you can configure the network later with the `netconfig` command. Choose yes to start the configuration, and choose OK on the NETWORK CONFIGURATION screen to begin.

The first item you need is a name for your machine. This is a personal name, and you can be as creative as you want. At the ENTER HOSTNAME prompt, enter your selected name and press <Return>.

**N O T E** It's a good idea to stick with lowercase letters, because UNIX and Linux are case-sensitive and most commands and interactions are done with lowercase letters. ■

The next prompt asks for something called a *domain name*. If you understand this term and have one available, enter the domain name for your system. If you don't have a domain name yet or don't understand what one is, don't worry. (Later chapters of this book, such as Chapter 26, "Understanding the Internet," explain what an Internet domain name is and how to configure your network with one.) If you don't have a domain name, enter the following as a placeholder:

```
tristar.com
```

▶ See "Internet Names," p. 525

**N O T E** You must enter a domain name to continue the installation process. ■

The next question deals with using *TCP/IP* through *loopback*. (If you don't understand these terms, check out Chapter 23, "Configuring a TCP/IP Network," for this information before returning to this section.) By answering yes to the `only use loopback?` prompt, you can skip several layers of configuration. Answering yes to this question and configuring your network later is a good idea. If you choose yes, the network configuration is complete and you can continue with the rest of the configuration.

▶ See "The/etc/hosts File," p. 474

▶ See "Configuring the Software Loopback Interface," p. 478

**Using the selection Program** If you have a mouse, you can use the `selection` program to cut and paste commands from your terminals. This screen asks whether you want to start the `selection` program automatically at boot time. If you have a mouse, you should start `selection` at boot time by answering yes at this screen. However, if you have a bus mouse, there are potential problems using `selection` and XFree86. If you have a bus mouse, you shouldn't start `selection` automatically.

If you don't choose to start `selection` at boot time, you can execute the program at any time with the following command:

```
selection -f &
```

**Configuring sendmail** Next, Setup asks you to choose a configuration file for `sendmail`. Chapter 29, "Using Electronic Mail," provides more information on using e-mail, but for starters you

might want to preload one of the supplied sendmail configuration files. If you know how you're connecting to the Internet with PPP, via Ethernet and so on, you can choose the SMTP-BIND or SMTP menu option. If you plan to use a modem and UUCP, select the UUCP menu option. If you don't plan on using a network, select the SKIP menu option. If you're unsure, the SKIP menu option is a good choice because you can reconfigure the system at a later time.

► See "Understanding E-Mail," p. 570

**Selecting a Time Zone** Next, Setup requires you to select a time zone that Linux uses to keep track of the date and time. Look through the list of available time zones and choose the most appropriate one. If you're in the United States, several selections begin with US. The same applies for Australia, Canada, and those systems that use Greenwich Mean Time or Universal Time. Select your time zone and press <Return>.

**Replacing/etc/fstab** /etc/fstab is a file-system table that represents each of your partitions. If you modify the table—with LILO, for example—while using the Setup program, it may ask you to replace the old one with the new one. This screen appears only if, for some reason, you stop and restart the Setup program or the configuration process. If you've made no changes to the partition table, answer no to this question; otherwise, answer yes.

## Modifying the Kernel with *rdev*

When configuration is complete, you can rerun Setup to add new items, or you can use the `pkgtool` program to view, add, or delete packages.

► See "Using `pkgtool`," p. 253

You might have to change items germane to your kernel, such as the video mode used. One solution is to reinstall Linux—a major undertaking, as you've just seen. Or you can recompile and build a new kernel from scratch, but that's not for the novice. Another option is to modify the current kernel, which, fortunately, Linux allows you to do with the `rdev` program. `rdev` is found in `/sbin` and should be used only when you're logged in as root.

For a complete listing of options, invoke `rdev` with the `\h` or `\?` parameter.

Your kernel file—that is, the actual software—is found in a file named `vmlinuz`. The reason for this name is historical; most UNIX systems store the kernel in a file named `vmunix`, and Linux is based on UNIX. Note the installed kernel is `vmlinuz`, where the `z` signifies a compressed kernel. When a kernel is built, the decompressed version is made and called `vmlinux`; however, the decompressed version isn't bootable. A parameter to `rdev` is usually this file name. You can use `rdev` to fix problems such as root and swap partitions and video modes.

## Building a New Kernel

Sometimes a problem has only one solution—a new kernel. The Linux kernel is the core operating system for Linux. Although not for the faint of heart, sometimes downloading a new kernel from the Net and building it is necessary. If you have some programming experience

and know your way around the C programming language, you should be able to build and install a new kernel; if not, you can skip this section.

You may have to install a new kernel for various reasons:

- A new patch is provided to run new hardware.
- You want to remove features from the kernel you don't use, thus lowering the memory requirements for your system.

The starting point is to determine what kernel version you're now running. You can find out the kernel version with the following command:

```
uname -a
```

The response indicates which version of the kernel is now running and when it was created. The version numbers are in the form of

*MajorVersionNumber.MinorVersionNumber.PatchLevel*

Linus Torvalds is the official release point for new kernels, although anyone can modify Linux (due to the GPL). The fact that Linus is the official release point gives the Linux development and user community a common baseline from which to work and communicate.

**N O T E** Be sure to read the Kernel HOWTO before actually trying to build and configure a new kernel! The Kernel HOWTO is in /doc/HOWTO. ■

To build a new kernel, you need to have the source files in the /usr/src/linux directory. You also need to have the C compiler package loaded, which is disk set d. If you didn't install that package during installation, use pkgtool to do so now.

First, you must get the new kernel sources or patches. The new sources are usually found on the Internet (check out [sunsite.unc.edu](http://sunsite.unc.edu) for the latest and greatest kernels). The source files are usually in a tar format and will need to be unarchived. If you're modifying your current kernel, obtaining the new sources is, of course, unnecessary.

**N O T E** It's a very good idea to make a backup copy of your current kernel with the following commands:

```
cd /usr/src
cp linux linux.sav
```

These commands copy the entire linux source directory to another directory called linux.sav. ■

Next, you should use the patch command to apply any patch files. After preparing the source files, you can configure and build your new system. Start by entering the following command from the /usr/src directory:

```
make config
```

This command asks you various questions about the drivers you want to install or configure. Pressing <Return> accepts the default value for each question; otherwise, you must supply the answer. Table 4.11 shows some of the questions; you may have to answer other questions depending on the version of the kernel you're installing or the patches you've applied.

**Table 4.11 Some Config Questions**

| Configuration Option     | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Kernel Math Emulation    | Asks if the kernel should emulate a math co-processor.   |
| Normal Hard disk Support | Enables drivers for all standard hard drives.  |
| XT Hard disk Support     | Applies only if your machine uses an XT class controller class instead of an AT controller.  |
| Networking Support       | Answering yes enables networking support within the kernel.  |
| SCSI Support             | Enables support for SCSI controllers.  |
| CD_ROM Drivers           | A series of questions dealing with CD-ROMs, especially those not supported within the standard SCSI Support package.   |
| Filesystems              | A series of questions dealing with file systems the kernel should support. If your kernel doesn't have support for the ISO9660 file system, you won't be able to use a CD-ROM. |
| Parallel Printer Support | Enables printer support via the parallel port.   |
| Mouse Support            | Bus mice need their own support from within the kernel.  |
| Sound Card Support       | A series of questions about the hardware and software configuration of a sound card.   |

After you answer the various questions to configure your new kernel, you must compile it.

**NOTE** The build process can take anywhere from 15 minutes to many hours. So relax and order a pizza! ☐

The following commands will build the new kernel:

```
make dep
make clean
make
```

When compilation completes, you can create a new boot disk as discussed earlier in the section "Creating the Boot and Root Disks." You can copy this kernel to a new diskette, or use LILO to boot the new kernel.

## Upgrading from a Previous Version of Slackware

The current version of Slackware (version 3.0) contains the Linux files in a special format, called Executable and Linking Format (ELF). Earlier versions of Slackware were in a format called a.out. You can't mix these types of executables on the same system, so if you plan to upgrade from an earlier version, you must reinstall from scratch to be on the safe side. This is especially important when dealing with the A and N packages. The `pkgtool` program can uninstall programs as well as install them, but the safest route is to back up your important configuration files and reinstall Linux from scratch.

If you're upgrading from similar formats—that is, from an ELF-based distribution to an ELF-based distribution—you can use `pkgtool` to remove those packages you want to update, and then use the tool to install the newer versions.

▶ See "Using `pkgtool`," p. 253

## Going Back to the Beginning

After you complete the setup and configuration of your system, the Setup program returns you to the main menu. From there, you can choose the `EXIT` option to leave Setup. If you want to change options, you can do so here. But Chapter 13, "Upgrading and Installing Software," provides information on updating and installing software after your initial installation. Choose `EXIT` to leave the Setup program.

Choosing `EXIT` returns you to the system prompt, indicated by the `#` sign. You're now in Linux and can issue simple commands, such as `ls` for a directory listing of files. At this time, though, you should reboot the system so that all your setup and configurations can take effect.

Rebooting Linux is more involved than rebooting DOS. You can't turn off the power and turn the system back on. If you do so in Linux, you can damage the file structures and systems. Linux tries to repair itself on bootup. Don't turn off the power while running Linux. To exit Linux, use the following command:

```
shutdown [-r] time
```

The optional `-r` flag indicates that the system should reboot after shutting down. `time` indicates the time that the system should shut down; you can use `now` in place of `time` to indicate immediate shutdown. Linux also recognizes the warm-boot keys used by DOS to reboot the machine, `<Ctrl-Alt-Delete>`, which Linux interprets as the command

```
shutdown -r now
```

▶ See "Shutting Down Linux" p. 218

Make sure that you've removed the all floppy disks from the drive and reboot your new Linux machine.

## Resolving Problems

After rebooting your machine, the LILO prompt should appear. Make sure that you can boot to your old operating system if you left it on the hard drive. If that system was DOS, press the <Shift> key and then type the short word you used to identify the DOS partition when you installed LILO. If you enter an invalid word, press <Tab> to get a list of valid operating system types. If you're having problems at this point, place your DOS boot disk in the boot drive and reboot.

You should be able to boot from your boot disk. When your system is up and running under DOS, try the Linux boot disk you created during installation—not the ones you created to originally install the entire system. If that boot disk doesn't work, you may have to reinstall Linux. Potential problems to initially check are the kernels and your hardware. Before starting over, make sure that you have the appropriate hardware. If you made notes during the installation process, check which kernel you installed against what hardware you have. If you have a SCSI CD-ROM, did you install the `idekern` instead of the `scsikern`? But do make sure that you have hardware supported by Linux.

## From Here...

After you have your system up and running, you can read the following chapters for further information about Linux:

- Chapter 5, “Running Linux Applications,” gets you up to speed on the various programs you just installed.
- Chapter 7, “Using X Windows,” is interesting if you've installed the X system.
- Chapter 13, “Upgrading and Installing Software,” provides instructions of how to reinstall packages you may have left out during the initial setup of your Linux system.
- Chapter 26, “Understanding the Internet,” briefs you on the basics about how to get to the Internet.







# Running Linux Applications

**N**ow that you've installed your Linux system, this chapter presents a brief introduction to setting up a user account for you to use and some basic commands to get you moving around your new system. This is your very own multitasking, multiuser system; experimenting is encouraged, so go ahead and play with your system. You may never get this type of opportunity on a typical UNIX system.

However, just playing with an operating system is no fun; it doesn't get your daily job done. After all, you don't use DOS all day, right? You use applications. Linux provides access to literally thousands of applications from around the world. You've installed several from the Slackware or Red Hat distribution from the accompanying CD-ROMs. There are plenty more where they came from, too. Programs that rival those costing hundreds of dollars for the PC platform are readily available for Linux. ■

## Using basic file and directory commands

Like UNIX, Linux makes extensive use of files, so you need to know how to work with files.

## Adding new users and executing programs

Like Windows NT, Linux allows many different users to access the system at the same time. To gain access, new users must be added to the system.

## Using the *minicom* modem communications program

*minicom*, a communications program available with Red Hat and Slackware, is similar to the DOS-based PROCOMM program.

## Playing the various games available

Linux provides various text-based and graphical games for your enjoyment.

## Using emulators that let you run DOS and Windows programs under Linux

Linux doesn't exist in a vacuum, and the myriad developers realize plenty of DOS and Windows programs are out there that users simply don't want to abandon. So several groups are working on emulators with which you can use your DOS and Windows programs under Linux.

## Maneuvering Through Linux

After installing Linux and rebooting, you're faced with a system prompt based on the name you gave your system during installation. The prompt looks similar to

```
Red Hat Linux release 4.0 (Colgate)
Kernel 2.0.18 on an I486
web login:
```

The prompt may indicate a different version of Linux, however, because Linux is an evolving system.

You must now supply a user name and a password. A user name identifies you to the operating system because Linux can support many different users, both at different times and concurrently. An account also provides each user with a default directory, called the *home directory*. Many accounts are also set up to restrict users to certain directories on the system and to prevent them from using certain commands, primarily to protect the files of one user from the prying eyes of another.

## Entering Commands

You enter commands in Linux much as you do in DOS and other command-line-oriented operating systems. Linux, like UNIX, is case-sensitive; if Linux doesn't know a command, make sure that you've spelled it correctly and that you've entered it in the proper case. Most commands are executed after you press <Return>.

## Recalling Command History

Linux also provides a history function to recall previous commands. This history is kept across sessions, too. You can press the <↑> key to recall previous commands, and then press <Return> to activate that command. To get a complete listing of all the prior commands you've entered, you use the history command:

```
[tackett@web~]$ history
1 clear
2 adduser
3 history
```

When you have the preceding history list, you can repeat the command by using the <↑> key and cycling through the commands until the proper one appears on the command line, or you can press <!> (the *bang* character) and enter the number of the command you want to re-execute. For example, if you wanted to repeat the *adduser* command in the previous list, enter

```
[tackett@web~]$ !2
```

The number of entries in the history list is user-defined in the user account's *.profile* configuration file. See Chapter 17, "Understanding Linux Shells," for more information on the *.profile* configuration file.

**NOTE** Linux provides many different command shells, some of which don't provide the history functions. ■

## Making Selections

If you have a mouse with your system and installed the `selection` program, you can also use your mouse to copy text from other areas of your screen to the command line. To select the text, simply move the mouse cursor (which appears as soon as you click the left mouse button) by holding down the left mouse button as you drag the cursor across the desired text, and then press the right mouse button to copy the text to the command line. This is useful if you need to enter a long file name on the command line.

## Completing Commands

Linux also offers another nice feature when entering commands. You can start to type a file name and then press `<Tab>`. Linux searches the directory for a file beginning with the same letters you've typed and completes the file name it finds. If Linux can't find a unique file name, it beeps and completes the file name to the last common character. For example, if you wanted to copy a file called `todo_monday` to `todo_today`, you type `cp to` at the prompt and then press `<Tab>`, Linux beeps and fills out the command line like so:

```
[tackett@web~]$ cp todo_
```

If you now typed an `m` and pressed `<Tab>`, Linux would place the entire `todo_monday` file name on the command line.

## Managing Users

On many systems, the person responsible for maintaining the user accounts is referred to as the *systems administrator*. The systems administrator sets up user accounts and performs other duties. For more information on the various aspects of systems administration, check out the chapters in Part II, "Systems Administration." On your Linux system, you're the systems administrator, so it's your responsibility to set up accounts for yourself, family, and friends.

To add an account for yourself, you must create that account as the systems administrator. Systems administrators are also sometimes referred to as *superusers* because they have so much control over the system. To begin your trek through Linux, you must first log in as the superuser via the root account.

## Logging In and Out

To log in as root, enter `root` at the login prompt. Linux asks for a password.

By using a password, you prevent unauthorized users from logging in to any account. Linux wants to make sure that the user name is in fact the correct user. You shouldn't share your passwords with just anyone. Linux protects the password you type by not *echoing*—that is, not displaying—the letters on screen, so make sure that you enter the correct password.

If you enter an invalid user name or password, Linux gives the following error message and starts the process over:

```
web login: jack
Password: password
Login incorrect
```

```
web login:
```

Because this is your first time logging in to the system since installation, the root account has no password set, so after entering **root**, you're presented with a command prompt. You now can enter Linux commands. Most commands are entered in the same way as in DOS: Type the command with any needed parameters and press <Return>.

**NOTE** The default installation of the Slackware distribution provides a small “fortune cookie” message every time someone logs in to the system. This message displays a short—sometimes amusing, sometimes not—adage about life. You can also get a fortune at any time by using the `fortune` command, provided that you've installed the text-based games.

The Red Hat distribution doesn't provide this functionality by default. To get a fortune cookie under Red Hat, type `/usr/games/fortune`. ■

To log out, enter `logout`. This command returns you to the login prompt. If this command doesn't work, try the `exit` command.

## Adding Users Under Slackware

After you log in as root, you should add an account for yourself. To add an account, enter the following command and follow the prompts:

```
[root@web~]# adduser
```

Adding a new user. The user name should be not exceed 8 characters in length, or you may run into problems later.

Enter login name for new account (^C to quit):

Look at this screen for a second. Notice the command prompt after which you entered the command. The prompt begins with the host name of the computer. This is the name you entered while installing the `n` package of disks. The next item is the `~` (tilde) character. Linux uses this character to refer to the account's home directory (described later). Here, it represents the directory the user is now located in. If you issued the `adduser` command from the `/usr/bin` directory, the prompt reads

```
[root@web~]#/usr/bin#
```

The next character is the pound sign (`#`). This prompt, by convention, belongs to any superuser account. A normal user account usually has `$` (dollar sign) as a prompt.

Next, you may have noticed the misspellings and improper grammar in the prompts—that is, should be not and you may run. These errors don't affect the performance of the system, but they help highlight the fact that Linux, while fully functional and a great system, isn't a commercial venture.

Now enter a user name of up to eight characters and press <Return>. An example session to create an account for Jack Tackett follows:

```
Enter login name for new account (^C to quit): jack
```

```
Editing information for new user [jack]
```

```
Full Name: Jack Tackett, Jr.
```

```
GID[100]:<Return>
```

```
Checking for an available UID after 500
501...
```

```
First unused uid is 502
```

```
UID [502]:<Return>
```

```
Home Directory [/home/jack]:<Return>
```

```
Shell [/bin/bash]:<Return>
```

```
Password: opus
```

```
Information for new user [jack]:
```

```
Home directory: [/home/jack] Shell: [/bin/bash]
```

```
Password: [opus] uid: [502] gid: [100]
```

```
Is this correct? [y/N] :y
```

```
Adding login [jack] and making directory [/home/jack]
```

```
Adding the files from the /etc/skel directory:
```

```
./ .kermc -> /home/jack/ ./ .kermc
./ .less -> /home/jack/ ./ .less
./ .lessrc -> /home/jack/ ./ .lessrc
./ .term -> /home/jack/ ./ .term
./ .term/termrc -> /home/jack/ ./ .termrc
./ .emacs -> /home/jack/ ./ .emacs
```

```
[root@web ~]#
```

As you move through the process, you must enter a full name for the user to help identify the user account further. Next, you're asked to enter a group ID and a user ID. Don't worry about these items at this time. Linux uses them to determine the directories and files that you have access to by default. You can safely accept the default values (within the brackets) by simply pressing <Return> after each request.

Next, you're asked to enter a home directory for the user. This is where the user is automatically placed when he or she first logs in. This is the user's account area for storing files and for working storage. Linux provides a default directory based on the user's name. If this default directory is acceptable, press <Return>; otherwise, enter a directory and press <Return>. Accept, for now, the defaults offered by the `adduser` command.

You're now asked to specify a shell for the user. The shell is a command interpreter much like COMMAND.COM is for DOS. The shell accepts the input and runs specified commands. You've been using a shell called `bash` since installing Linux. For the time being, simply accept the default `bash` option.

▶ See "Understanding Shells," p. 325

The final parameter is the password for the account. It's highly recommended that you provide every account with a password. Linux then displays all the information entered and asks whether it's correct. If the information isn't correct, enter `n` (or simply press `<Return>`, because `No` is the default choice); you must go back and correct the errors. If everything is correct, enter `y`.

Linux displays a series of files it copies from a skeletal user account located in the `./etc/skel` directory to the new user's home directory. These files are configuration files for such items as the user's terminal and how such programs as `emacs` and `less` run from their accounts. The users can modify these files at any time to change the default behavior of the programs.

After adding the account, you can verify its existence in one of two ways; the quickest is to use a utility called `finger` to see whether the user has an account. The general form of the command is `finger name`. For example, you can test for the account you just created by entering

```
[root@web ~]#finger jack
Login: jack   Name Jack Tackett, Jr.
Directory: /home/jack   Shell: /bin/bash
Never logged in.
No Mail.
No Plan.
[root@web ~]#
```

If the user has an account, the appropriate information is displayed; otherwise, a message indicating no such user has an account is displayed.

The next way to verify the account is to actually log in to the account to see whether Linux will let you. You can do this in one of several ways:

- You can log out and then log in as the new user.
- You can use the `su` command, which stands for *switch user*.
- You can use the `login` command.
- You can use one of the six virtual terminals provided by Linux to log in to a new account. Remember, Linux is multiuser.

Table 5.1 presents an overview of each method.

**Table 5.1 Logging In to a Newly Created User Account**

| Command               | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| logout                | Logs you out of the root account and brings you back to the login prompt. You no longer have access to the root account until you log in as root.  |
| su <i>username</i>    | Logs you out of the account, doesn't ask for the user name to log in as, and then prompts you for the password. If you don't specify <i>username</i> , su assumes that you're trying to log in as root and expects you to enter the root password.   |
| login <i>username</i> | Almost the same as su, except that leaving off <i>username</i> merely places you at the normal login prompt.   |
| <Alt-Fx>              | Lets you use the virtual terminals. You can access a virtual terminal by pressing the <Alt> key and one of the function keys (F1 through F6). This takes you to another login screen, where you can log in as the new user. The best feature of using the virtual terminals is that you're still left in the other account and can swap back and forth by using the <Alt-Fx> keys; you aren't logged out of the other account. |

**NOTE** If you try to add a user later from the account you now create, you may not be able to use the command `adduser` because certain commands can be entered only by the superuser, `adduser` being one of them. If you have trouble adding a user to the system, make sure that you're logged in as root.

## Adding Users with Red Hat

Red Hat Linux automates many of the `adduser` functions. To add a new user from the command line, enter the following command:

```
[root@web /root]#adduser jack
```

This command is a shell script located in `/usr/sbin`. You must be the superuser—that is, root—to issue this command.

► See “Working with Shell Scripts,” p. 350

The script, which is just an ASCII file, creates the necessary directories and files needed by the new user. The only thing left is to set the user's password when he or she first logs in. Changing passwords is discussed later in the section “Changing Passwords.”

► See “Viewing the Contents of a File,” p. 309

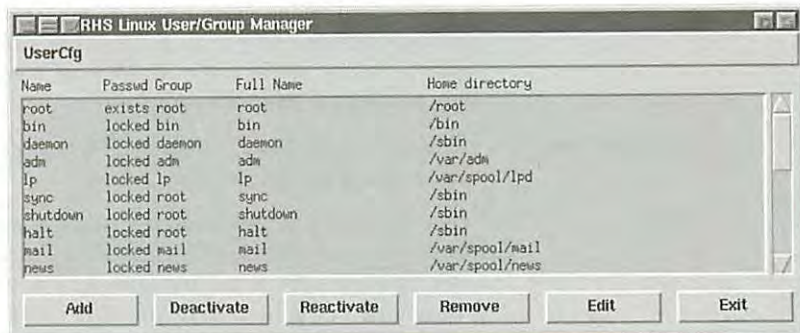


## Using Red Hat's Control Panel to Manage Users

If you installed XFree86 with your Red Hat installation, you can use the Control Panel's User/Group Manager configuration window (see Figure 5.1) to add users, modify user settings, and delete or deactivate users. To manipulate a user's account, simply select the user in the dialog box and click the appropriate button. Table 5.2 describes each button's function.

**FIG. 5.1**

The RHS Linux User/Group Manager dialog lets you see the information stored in `/etc/passwd` as well as manipulate the information.

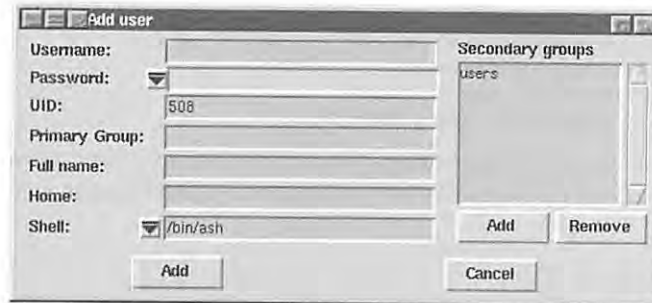


**Table 5.2 The RHS Linux User/Group Manager Buttons**

| Button     | Description   |
|------------|---|
| Add        | Displays the Add User dialog box, which lets you set the various required attributes for a user, such as home directory and password.   |
| Deactivate | Allows you to deactivate the account of a user who you know will need the account again in the future. You may want to deactivate an account for a user who's on sabbatical or is being disciplined for some infraction. You can choose to compress the user's files to save space on your system until you reactivate that user later. |
| Reactivate | Allows you to reactivate a user's account.  |
| Remove     | Deletes a user from your system. The user's various files and directories will be removed. You may want to back up these files before deleting them.  |
| Edit       | Allows you to edit user accounts for such items as passwords (if they forget their password), their groups, or the shell they want to use.  |
| Exit       | Exits the RHS Linux User/Group Manager.   |

Clicking the Add button displays the Add User dialog box shown in Figure 5.2. You can set up the user's account from this dialog box by filling in the information for the various fields. Table 5.3 describes the fields and their function.

**FIG. 5.2**  
Red Hat's graphical admin tools make adding new users a breeze.



**Table 5.3 The Options of the Add User Dialog Box**

| Field         | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Username      | The name the user uses to log in to your system.   |
| Password      | The user's password. To give the user a password, you must use the combo box arrow and choose Edit from the menu. This displays a new dialog box that lets you enter a new password for the user. The password combo box also lets you blank out the password field by selecting the "none" value, or lock the password. |
| UID           | A field generated by the system. For more information on UIDs and groups, see Chapter 10, "Managing User Accounts."  |
| Primary Group | The primary group to which the user belongs. Groups allow you to put users into similar groupings, all having the same permissions.  |
| Full Name     | The user's full name.  |
| Home          | The user's home directory. Typically, it's located in a directory under /home or /usr/home.  |
| Shell         | The default shell the user's account starts with. This combo box allows you to select any shell offered by the Red Hat system for the user.  |

► See "Working with Groups," p. 225

## Changing Passwords

In the future, you may want to change your password or add a password to an account that doesn't have one, such as the current root account. You should always password-protect the root account.

To change a password under any version of Linux or UNIX, you use the `passwd` command, specify the old and new password, and then verify the new password. If you don't have (or—worse—don't remember) the old password, you can't use the `passwd` command to change your password. The typical sequence for `passwd` follows:

```
[tackett@web ~]$ passwd
Changing password for jack
Enter old password: password
Enter new password: new-password
Re-type new password: new-password
```

If you make an error, Linux informs you that the password hasn't been changed. Linux also requires at least six characters for a valid password, and this minimum is enforced.

### CAUTION

*Don't forget your passwords!* If you forget a user password, you must change the account information. If you forget the root account password, you must use the boot floppy created during installation to boot the system and change the password. Typically, you can set the password to empty by selecting none in the RHS Add/Edit User dialog box, and then let the user set a new password with the `passwd` command. You can also edit the `/etc/passwd` file and remove the encrypted password from the user's record.

► See "Setting User Passwords," p. 223

## Using Basic Commands

You need to know some basic commands to get around the system. The following sections provide some of the commands you need to use your Linux system. Finally, many of the "commands" presented in the following sections are actually utility programs that Linux uses to extend its command set. These programs are found in the `/bin`, `/sbin`, and `/usr/bin` directories.

### Getting Help for Commands with *man*

To get online help for each of the various Linux commands, you can type `man`. Linux then displays, a screen at a time, any information it has on the command. If you aren't sure of what command to use, you can try the `-k` parameter and enter a simple keyword that represents the topic of interest. `man` then searches through its help files (called `man`, or manual, pages) for a topic that contains the keyword. Linux also provides an alias for this command, called `apropos`.

If you enter the command `man ls`, Linux provides help on the `ls` command, including all its parameters. The command `man -k cls` provides a listing of commands that have the word `cls` in the help file; the command `apropos cls` is the same as `man -k cls`.

### Using Directory-Manipulation Commands

Linux provides many commands to work with directories. Like other operating systems you may have used, Linux allows you to create, delete, and move directories, as well as display information about the directory.

**Changing the Current Working Directory with *cd*** Linux, like DOS and other operating systems, stores files in a tree structure called a directory. You can specify a file via a path from the root directory, specified with the / character, to the file itself. Thus, the configuration file for emacs for the user jack can be exactly specified like so:

```
/home/jack/.emacs
```

If you're familiar with the DOS limits of eight characters for a file name and three characters for an extension, you'll be pleasantly surprised to learn that Linux has no such limit on file names.

► **See** "Understanding File and Path Names," p. 288

Linux also uses the concept of a home directory, which is specified when an account is added to the system. A user's home directory is usually specified with the ~ (tilde) character. You can use the tilde in place of the directory name, where the user wants to copy a file from the current directory `\usr\home\jack` to his or her home directory:

```
cp .emacs ~
```

To move around the Linux directory structure, you use the change directory command, *cd*. If you enter *cd* without any parameters, Linux immediately returns you to your home directory. To move from one directory to another directory, you use the *cd* command much as you do in DOS—that is, *cd new-directory*. Linux also uses the single . (dot) to represent the current directory and the .. to represent the parent directory. In fact, it's DOS that emulates UNIX, not UNIX/Linux emulating DOS.

**NOTE** Be careful how you specify the directory separator. DOS uses as its directory separator the \ (backslash) character, which Linux uses as the character for continuing a command on another line. To separate directory names in Linux, you must use the / (forward slash) character.

Also, although DOS doesn't mind if you fail to use spaces when specifying the . and .. parameters, Linux does. Linux doesn't understand *cd ..*, but it understands *cd ..* Linux needs the space separating the command and the parameter. ☐

**Displaying Information About Files and Directories with *ls*** *ls* stands for *list* and is used by Linux to display a list of files. This command is the counterpart to the DOS *DIR* command. (Linux also accepts the *dir* command to list files in a directory.) Under Linux, the *ls* command displays all the main files in a directory in color. By default, blue indicates directories and green indicates executable programs. You can change the default colors by modifying the file `/etc/DIR_COLORS`.

► **See** "Listing Files," p. 302

*ls* takes many parameters to specify not only how to display a file but what files to display. The most common parameter is *-la*, which tells *ls* to display information in a long format for every file in a directory.

The command `ls -la` lists all information about every file in the current directory. The command `ls .emacs` lists the file `.emacs`, whereas `ls -l .emacs` lists all information about the file `.emacs`.

**Creating New Directories with `mkdir`** Because Linux's file system is based on directories, Linux provides the `mkdir` command so users can create new ones. Unlike DOS, which has an alias for the `mkdir` command called `MD`, Linux requires that the full `mkdir` command be spelled out. You must specify a name for each new directory, as shown in the following example:

```
mkdir backup
```

**NOTE** Linux does provide a way, via the command shell, to make aliases for command names; thus, if you simply can't live without the DOS `MD` command and hate typing `mkdir`, you can alias `md` to the `mkdir` command.

► See "Aliasing Commands," p. 349 ■

**Deleting Directories with `rmdir`** The `rmdir` command deletes Linux directories. The command takes the name of the directory to delete. This directory must be empty—otherwise, Linux can't remove it.

For example, if the `/backup` directory had two directories within it, the command `rmdir /backup` fails. The command `rmdir /backup/jack/*` removes all files in the `/backup/jack` directory, and then `rmdir /backup/jack` removes the now-empty `/backup/jack` directory.

### CAUTION

You can't delete a directory that contains files with the `rmdir` command. Instead, you can use the `-r` flag to the `rm` command. For example,

```
rm -r *
```

deletes everything from the current directory and every directory below the current directory. Be very careful using this command, because the moment you delete a directory, you can't recover the directory or the files that were located in the directory. Make backups.

## Using File-Manipulation Commands

Because Linux treats directories and files similarly, it provides similar commands for manipulation.

**Copying Files with `cp`** The `cp` command is similar to the DOS `COPY` command. You use this command to copy one or more files from one directory to another directory. The syntax of `cp` is

```
cp from-filename to-filename
```

You must supply a *from-filename* and a *to-filename* for the files to be copied. If you want to preserve the file name, use the dot (`.`) as a placeholder for the *to-filename* parameter. This is in contrast to DOS, where you could leave off the *to-filename*.

The command `cp fred1 fred1.old` copies the file `fred1` to a backup file named `fred1.old`, whereas the command `cp ~fred1.old /backup/jack` copies the file `fred1.old` from the home directory to the `/backup/jack` directory. (The `~` character represents the user's home directory.)

**Moving Files with `mv`** The `mv` command, which is similar to the DOS `MOVE` command, allows you to move files from one directory to another directory. When you move a file, it has the same effect as if you had copied the files to a new directory and then deleted the files in the old directory. `mv` doesn't make a copy of the files.

The syntax of the `mv` command is identical to the `cp` command:

```
mv from-filename to-filename
```

The command `mv fred1 fred1.old` copies the file `fred1` to a backup file named `fred1.old` and deletes the old `fred1` file, whereas the command `mv ~fred1.old /backup/jack` moves the `fred1.old` file from the home directory to the `/backup/jack` directory.

**Deleting Files with `rm`** To delete files under Linux, you use the `rm` command. The `rm` command is dangerous because as soon as a file is deleted, you can never recover it. For safety reasons, you should use the following form of the `rm` command:

```
rm -i filename
```

The `-i` parameter tells the command to query, or inquire, the user to see if that's the file they really want to remove. For example, the command `rm fred1` removes the file named `fred1`, whereas the command `rm -i fred1` deletes the `fred1` file after asking whether the user really wants to remove this file.

### CAUTION

As soon as you delete a file under Linux, that file is gone. You can't undelete a file or directory under Linux like you can with DOS. If you delete a file, your only hope is a backup copy.

**Displaying File Contents with `more`** The `more` command displays a screen of a text file. You can look through a text file without invoking an editor, printing the file, or trying to pause the terminal as it displays the file. To display the contents of your `emacs` configuration file, for example, you can type the following:

```
more .emacs
```

**N O T E** If you try to pass a binary data file to `more`, you could have some unpleasant effects—for example, your terminal can lock up. If your terminal does lock up, try pressing `<Ctrl-q>` or `<Ctrl-s>`.

A disadvantage with `more` is that you can't back up to see a screen of information once it passes. But the command discussed in the following section overcomes that problem.

**Using `less`—a Better `more`** `less` displays information a screen at a time on your terminal. The program's name is a play on words for the program it's meant to replace—`more`. Like `more`, `less` can display a screen of information in a text file, but unlike `more`, `less` allows you to page back and forth within the file. You can use the following command to browse through the `readme` file located in the `info` directory:

```
less /info/readme
```

**Clearing the Screen with `clear`** Sometimes after filling your terminal screen with information, you want a blank screen while you sit and contemplate your next action. Under DOS, you can use the `cls` command, but under Linux, you must use the `clear` command.

## Dealing with DOS Files Under Linux

During installation, you were given the chance to make any DOS partitions you had available visible to Linux. These partitions were then placed in a directory you specified during configuration—for example, `/dos`.

► See “Repartitioning the Drive,” p. 85

If you want to copy these files to a floppy, using the `cp` command may cause problems because UNIX and Linux treat text files a little differently than DOS, especially when dealing with carriage returns and line-feeds. To overcome this problem, a group of programs were developed to help deal with MS-DOS files under a UNIX environment. These are the `m-` commands, which include such commands as `mcop` and `mdir`. `mcop` works just like the DOS `COPY` command, and `mdir` provides a directory listing. As you may notice, they resemble their DOS counterparts, except that they begin with the letter `m`, hence the name “`m-` commands.” The `m-` commands are part of the `mtools` package, which is a collection of public-domain programs that allows UNIX to interact with DOS files much more easily.

These commands also make copying files to floppy disks much easier because you can use the DOS designation, like `A`, rather than the Linux designation `/dev/fd0`. For more information on the `m-` commands, enter

```
man mtools
```

Table 5.4 provides a brief listing of the various `m-` commands.

**Table 5.4 The `m-` Commands**

| Command              | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>mattrib</code> | Displays the file attributes for the specified file(s) |
| <code>mcd</code>     | Changes directory to the specified path                |
| <code>mcop</code>    | Copies the files specified to the new path             |

| Command              | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>mdel</code>    | Deletes the specified files                         |
| <code>mdir</code>    | Provides a directory listing                        |
| <code>mformat</code> | Formats a floppy                                    |
| <code>mlabel</code>  | Labels the DOS file system                          |
| <code>mkdir</code>   | Makes a directory                                   |
| <code>rmdir</code>   | Removes a directory (must be empty, just as in DOS) |
| <code>ren</code>     | Renames an existing DOS file                        |
| <code>type</code>    | Displays the text contents of a DOS file            |

**NOTE** Although you can see a DOS file with Linux and even do some editing on text files in DOS partitions that Linux can see, you can't execute DOS or Windows programs under Linux. However, projects are under way across the Internet to supply such emulation for Linux. Although the prospects look very good for such emulators in the future, at this time DOS and Windows emulation isn't fully available. You'll have a brief introduction to both items later in this chapter. ■

## Shutting Down Linux

When you're finished using a DOS machine, you can typically just turn off the power and walk away. You could also do the same under Windows, although there's a great possibility for file damage. Under Linux, there are even more chances for damaging your system, both to hardware and file systems, by simply turning off the power. You must shut down Linux in an orderly fashion, or you might corrupt the operating system to the point where it can't boot the next time you try.

Linux keeps a lot of information about itself and files in memory, in areas called *buffers*, before writing the information to disk. This process helps improve system performance and control access to the hardware—something a multitasking operating systems needs to maintain so that one user doesn't try to use a hardware device that another user is using. If you turn off the power, this information is lost and you can corrupt your file system.

► See "Shutting Down Linux," p. 218

Because Linux is a multiuser and multitasking operating system, it must make sure that every user stops processing gracefully and save any work in progress before shutting the system down, to prevent data loss and file damage. This also gives each user logged in to the system time to log out. To shut down Linux in an orderly fashion, you must use the `shutdown` command. The `shutdown` command syntax is

```
shutdown [-r] time-to-shutdown [message]
```



The optional `-r` flag indicates that Linux should immediately reboot after it shuts down. This is useful if you want to quit Linux and boot to another operating system.

`time-to-shutdown` indicates when the system should shut down. The time is specified on a 24-hour clock, so you can tell the machine to shut down at 11 p.m. by entering

```
shutdown 23:00
```

The `message` parameter is a message sent to each user logged in to the system. This message is displayed on their terminals. You can use this message to tell users why you're shutting down the system. For example, if you needed to do weekly backups, you can use the following message to make sure that everyone logs out of the system:

```
[root@web /root]# shutdown -r 23:00 Shutting down at 11:00pm for system
maintenance
```

Remember, don't simply turn off the computer or press the reset button to exit Linux.

### CAUTION

On some systems, Linux traps the <Ctrl-Alt-Del> reboot keystroke and executes an orderly shutdown as though the user had typed the `shutdown` command. However, on some systems Linux can't detect this keystroke combination and reboots immediately.

If you do accidentally turn off your system and damage the file structure, you can use the `fsck` command to try and repair the file system.

► See "Using the `fsck` Command," p. 275

## Running Linux Programs

When you're familiar with moving around Linux and executing basic commands, you can try several applications installed when you set up the system. These applications cover a broad range of utilities, from a calculator to full-featured C and C++ compilers. Some of these programs cost hundreds of dollars; thanks to the GNU philosophy, however, many are readily available, and the only monetary outlay is the cost of getting the program from the Internet.

Luckily, many programs for Linux are also available on local bulletin boards, which you can reach via the telecommunications program included with the Slackware and Red Hat distributions of Linux. Also, many CD-ROM vendors supply CD-ROMs with hundreds of UNIX programs in source code. You can retrieve these programs from the CD-ROM and, by using the `gcc` and `g++` compilers distributed with Linux, get those programs up and running on your PC—even if you've never compiled a program before.

Finally, these programs are text-based and don't require the X Windows system to operate; thus, they may not have flashy graphics, but they work with most Linux installations.

## Using the *workbone* CD Player

*workbone* is installed with the Slackware distribution. *workbone* is a text-based CD player written by Thomas McWilliams. If you have a CD-ROM capable of playing audio CDs, you should give it a try.

McWilliams wrote the program for his own enjoyment by hacking an X Windows-based program. Because he did this for his own enjoyment, *workbone* may not work correctly with every CD-ROM drive.

The program uses the numeric keypad to control the CD, so make sure that you have the <Num Lock> key engaged. Table 5.5 lists the various controls used.

**Table 5.5** *workbone* Commands

| Key | Description                                    |
|-----|--|
| 0   | Exits <i>workbone</i> and leaves music playing |
| DEL | Displays the help screen                       |
| 1   | Goes backward 15 seconds                       |
| 2   | Aborts <i>workbone</i> and stops music         |
| 3   | Goes forward 15 seconds                        |
| 4   | Goes to the Previous selection                 |
| 5   | Restarts the current selection                 |
| 6   | Goes to the next selection                     |
| 7   | Stops  |
| 8   | Pauses/resumes                                 |
| 9   | Plays  |

As *workbone* plays, the display updates the time and current selection. If you want to continue working while your CD plays, you have two choices:

- You can exit *workbone* and leave the music playing (key 0).
- If you want to keep the display up and running, you can simply switch to another virtual terminal via the <Alt> key and log in to another account. When you want to check on the display, you can switch back to the proper virtual terminal and check on the status of the CD.

You can also stop the CD with the 0 key and then later simply re-execute the program to see what tracks are playing. For more information, check out the man page by typing `man workbone`.

## Using the `sc` Spreadsheet Calculator

Do spiffy computers sell software, or does software sell computers? This is an age-old question whose answer tends to side with the concept that the proper application can sell thousands of computers. When the program called VisiCalc entered the market, PC use in business exploded. Why? Because for years, business people had played what-if games with their businesses on pieces of paper called ledgers, or spreadsheets. VisiCalc was an electronic version of the paper spreadsheet; it revolutionized how business did its forecasting and planning. Today, the successors of VisiCalc, such as Microsoft Excel and Lotus 1-2-3, still carry on the legacy started by VisiCalc. In the world of Linux, `sc` carries on that same legacy.

`sc` is a spreadsheet calculator containing rows and columns of cells. Each cell can contain a numeric value, a label string, or an expression or formula that evaluates to a numeric value or label string. These label strings can also be based on other cells to form complex relationships across a multiple collection of information.

If you've worked with other spreadsheet programs, you should have no problem getting up to speed on using `sc`. If you do need help, you can run a tutorial program to help you learn by entering

```
sc /usr/lib/sc/tutorial.sc
```

This tutorial provides an excellent introduction to using `sc`. If you need a quick reference card, you can print one by entering

```
scqref | lpr
```

The solid bar is referred to as a *pipe* because you're piping, or passing on, the results of one command, `scqref`, to another command, `lpr`.

**NOTE** Check out Chapter 21, "Printing," if you have any problems printing with Linux. The biggest problem you may face, besides the possibility of not being able to print at all, is a bad case of the *jaggies*, which are the stair-step effects caused by how UNIX/Linux treats carriage returns and line feeds versus how MS-DOS treats them when printing text files containing these characters. □

For online help about `sc`, simply type `man sc`.

## Using the `bc` Calculator

`bc` is a command-line calculator for those quick-and-dirty calculations. `bc` is actually a sophisticated programming language that allows you to evaluate arithmetic expressions interactively.

When executed, `bc` responds with a short copyright notice and then leaves you at the command prompt, a blank line. You can then enter simple addition and subtraction functions. You can also perform division and multiplication—however, the version of `bc` distributed with Linux truncates the result of division and multiplication operations. (This is one of the hazards to be aware of when dealing with GNU software.) `bc` is great for simple calculations, as long as you're aware of the possible problems with its division and multiplication operations.

Another great feature is `bc`'s capability of storing values from one operation to the next with a simple syntax, *variable-name = expression*. The following example calculates the value of `125 * 5` and stores the result in the `var1` variable. To see what the results of the calculation are, you can type the name of the variable and `bc` prints the value on the next line, as shown in the example. Next, the example sets the variable `var2` to the contents of `var1` divided by 5.

```
var1 = 125 * 5
var1
625
var2 = var1 / 5
var2
```

## Using the *minicom* Telecommunications Package

Let's hope, after having read the chapters in Part V, "Network Administration," that you can get your Linux system up and running on the Internet, the global Information Superhighway so much in the news today. Until then, you can still connect with the rest of the world if you have a modem and a telecommunications package. Linux supplies the package, called `minicom`, so all you have to do is supply the modem connected to one of your serial ports.

`minicom`, like a lot of Linux software, was written by a single person with help from many people on the Internet. The main author of `minicom` is Miquel van Smoorenburg. `minicom` is a very robust application that rivals many other commercial applications. With it you can connect to various bulletin-board services, maintain a list of numbers to dial, and download and upload files as soon as you connect. Help for most of `minicom`'s functionality is available on the man page.

The first item to remember is that `minicom` uses the key sequence `<Ctrl-Shift-a>` to access the various functions, such as auto-dial and file downloading. To get help at anytime while in `minicom`, simply press `<Ctrl-a><z>` to display a brief command summary screen. Table 5.6 lists a few of those commands.

**Table 5.6** *minicom* Command Summary

| Key | Description   |
|-----|---|
| D   | Dialing directory                                     |
| S   | Sends files   |
| P   | Communication parameters                              |
| L   | Toggles on or off capturing the session to a file     |
| F   | Sends a BREAK to the other terminal                   |
| T   | Sets terminal emulation between vt100, Minix, or ANSI |
| W   | Toggles line wraps on or off                          |

*continues*

**Table 5.6 Continued**

| <b>Key</b> | <b>Description</b>                             |
|------------|--|
| G          | Runs a <code>minicom</code> script file        |
| R          | Receives a file                                |
| A          | Adds a line-feed character to the end of lines |
| H          | Hangs up the phone line                        |
| M          | Initializes the modem                          |
| K          | Runs the Kermit protocol                       |
| E          | Toggles on or off local echo                   |
| C          | Clears the local screen                        |
| O          | Allows you to configure <code>minicom</code>   |
| J          | Jumps to a new command shell                   |
| X          | Quits and resets the modem                     |
| I          | Cursor key mode                                |
| Z          | Displays the help screen                       |
| B          | Scrolls back through the terminal window       |

While in the help window, you can simply press the appropriate letter to execute the command. From the `minicom` program, however, you must preface the appropriate letters with `<Ctrl-a>`.

`minicom` has four file-transfer protocols: `zmodem`, `ymodem`, `xmodem`, and `kermit`. If possible, you should try to use `zmodem` because of its superior error-recovery capabilities. If `zmodem` isn't available on the other system you're dialing, you should try each of the protocols in the order given. This isn't to say `kermit` is a bad protocol (it's not)—it's just slower than most of the others. The upside to using `kermit` is that more than likely almost any system you log in to supports `kermit`.

The next area you should be aware of is that `minicom` takes advantage of some commands that gives it access to the same type of power controlled by the superuser; thus, anyone running `minicom` has access to certain features of Linux that you may not want them to have.

► See "Handling File Security," p. 242

## Playing Games

If you installed the `y` package, you have access to myriad games. Most are text-based, so you don't need the X Windows system up and running to enjoy a few minutes of fun. To get an idea of the variety of games, check out the `/usr/games` directory. By listing the files, you can see

the available games. If you don't know what a game is or does, you can try to get help on the game with the `man` command. Of course, if you're adventurous, you can simply start the game and explore. Have fun!

## Tetris

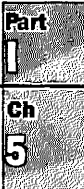
Tetris originated in the former Soviet Union. In the game, various shapes drop from the sky and pile up at the bottom of the screen. The object of the game is to eradicate those shapes building up and keep the game area from filling. You accomplish the elimination by completely filling a row across the playing field. When you connect one wall of the playing field with the other so that there are no gaps, that row disappears and all the shapes above it fall down to take up the vacated row. The catch to this strategy is that the shapes fall in a variety of patterns. To fill a row, you must decide how to orient a shape and then where to place it before it touches another block. When a shape touches another block, it remains at that position.

This game has been ported to most platforms, so if you've played the game on other systems, you should have no problem playing Tetris under Linux.

This version of the game is meant to be played only from the terminal, so don't expect fancy graphics. Also, the biggest pain is that on other systems you can position and orient the falling shapes with the keyboard arrow keys—not so with this version of Tetris. You must use the keys listed in Table 5.7 for positioning and orienting the various blocks.

**Table 5.7 Tetris Command Keys**

| Command            | Key       |
|--------------------|-----------|
| Move left          | <>        |
| Move right         | </>       |
| Rotate             | <>        |
| Drop               | Space bar |
| Pause              | <s>       |
| Quit               | <q>       |
| Refresh the screen | <Ctrl-l>  |



## Dungeon

Dungeon is a text adventure based on the ancient Adventure text games, but instead of caves, you deal with dungeons. You interact with this text-based world in search of treasures and adventure; if you've played other text adventures, this one is very similar. If you've used only glittery graphics, sit back and use the brain. You interact with the game by issuing commands and requests in the form of verbs and nouns. For instance, at the beginning of the game it tells

you that you're in an open field west of a big, white house with a boarded front door. There's a small mailbox here. At the prompt, you can issue the following command to read whatever is in the box:

```
There is a small mailbox here.
> open box
Opening the mailbox reveals:
a leaflet.
> read leaflet
```

The game then provides a brief overview of the game and the talented programmers who built it. The last line of the information in the leaflet tells you to get assistance by entering the command `help` or `info`.

## Trek

Trek is a text-based game based on the popular TV series *Star Trek*. Your goal is to survive the bloody battles with the Klingons and rid your star sector from their scourge. When you start the game by typing `trek`, you're asked a series of questions to set up the game:

- You're asked for the length of the game you want to play.
- You can restart a saved game from a logfile. To do so, you specify a logfile on the command line. This file name then becomes the name of the game saved.
- You're asked what skill level you want to play.
- You can enter a password so that others can't claim your glory. No, really—you need a password so that no one but you can blow up your ship.

At any point—during setup or while playing—you can type a question mark to get help on the possible answers and actions available to you. Table 5.8 lists some of the possible actions.

**Table 5.8 Trek Commands**

| Command               | Description                                   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>abandon</code>  | Quits Trek                                    |
| <code>damages</code>  | Lists the damages your starship has sustained |
| <code>impulse</code>  | Goes to impulse power                         |
| <code>ram</code>      | Ramming speed                                 |
| <code>srscan</code>   | Short-range scan                              |
| <code>undock</code>   | Leaves starbase                               |
| <code>capture</code>  | Captures the Klingons                         |
| <code>destruct</code> | Self-destructs                                |
| <code>lrscan</code>   | Long-range scan                               |

| Command   | Description                     |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| dump      | Who knows?                      |
| visual    | Looks at the Klingons' position |
| cloak     | Cloaks the ship                 |
| dock      | Enters starbase                 |
| move      | Plots and follows course        |
| rest      | Rests for a while               |
| terminate | Quits                           |
| Warp      | Engages warp engines            |
| computer  | Finds out some information      |
| help      | Calls a starbase for help       |
| phasers   | Fires phasers                   |
| shields   | Shields up                      |
| torpedo   | Fires torpedoes                 |

The game begins by telling you how many Klingons are in your sector and how many starbases are here and their location. Docking at a starbase can replenish and repair your ship. Unfortunately, the game doesn't tell you where the nasty Klingon warships are located. Make sure that you pay attention to energy use; otherwise, you're in for some bad surprises.

Although this text-based game has no glitzy graphics, you can get a short-range scan with the `srscan` command, which displays your sector and all known objects at their respective coordinates. `srscan` also provides you with valuable information on the condition of your ship. All coordinates refer to a Cartesian matrix that you can maintain on paper—better yet, graph paper—so you don't have to remember from one `srscan` command to the other.

## Running DOS Programs Under Linux

After you have enough of running various Linux applications, you occasionally might want to run some of your DOS or Windows programs. Although not yet a complete reality, work is progressing to allow you to do just that, by emulating the various operating systems under Linux. DOSEMU is a program that lets programs based on MS-DOS (and variants such as PC-DOS) run under Linux. DOSEMU stands for DOS EMUlator.

Also, a project is under way to allow users access to Windows programs under Linux. This project, called Wine, and is discussed later in "Running MS Windows Programs under Linux."



## Installing DOSEMU

You can find the current version of DOSEMU on the accompanying Slackware CD-ROM under the name `/contrib/dosemu_0.000` and `contrib/dosemu_0.060`. This file archive and its files need to be placed in the `/usr/src` directory and then unzipped and untarred by using the following commands:

```
[root@web src]# gzip -d dosemu_5.tgz
[root@web src]# tar -xvf dosemu_5.tar
```

Next, you must build the various files by using the following commands:

```
[root@web src]#make config
[root@web src]#make depend
[root@web src]#make most
```

These commands should install the DOSEMU files in the `/var/lib/dosemu` directory. You must be logged in as root and have at least 10M of virtual memory available for the build.

**NOTE** You must have installed package `d`, the program development package. You need the various compilers and tools within this package to build the DOS emulator.

## Configuring DOSEMU

After the emulator is built, you must configure the system. To start, make a bootable DOS disk and copy the following DOS files on the disk: `command.com`, `fdisk.exe`, and `sys.com`.

Next, copy the following DOSEMU files from the `dosemu` subdirectory onto the floppy: `emufs.sys`, `ems.sys`, `cdrom.sys`, and `exitemu.com`. You can use the `m-` commands mentioned earlier in “Dealing with DOS Files Under Linux” to copy the files from the Linux partitions to the floppy drive.

### TIP

If you have trouble finding the Linux files, you can use the `find` command to locate the necessary files—for example,

```
find -name emufs.sys -print
```

This command will display the location of the file on your system, providing that it exists.

DOSEMU requires a configuration file, `dosemu.conf`, to operate correctly. You must customize this file for your system. You can find an example file in the `examples` directory on your system with the name `config.dist`. Listing 5.1 shows `config.dist`. Remarks are indicated with a pound symbol (`#`), and most options take the form of *parameter value*. If a parameter has more than one value, the values are placed within braces (`{}`).

### Listing 5.1 A Sample `dosemu.conf` File

```
# Linux dosemu 0.51 configuration file.
# Updated to include QuickStart documentation 5/10/94 by Mark Rejhon
# James MacLean, jmaclean@fox.nstn.ns.ca, 12/31/93
```

```

# Robert Sanders, gt8134b@prism.gatech.edu, 5/16/93
#
# NOTICE:
# - Although QuickStart information is included in this file, you
#   should refer to the documentation in the "doc" subdirectory of the
#   DOSEMU distribution, wherever possible.
# - This configuration file is designed to be used as a base to make
#   it easier for you to set up DOSEMU for your specific system.
# - Configuration options between brace brackets { } can be split onto
#   multiple lines.
# - Comments start with # or ; in column 1. (beginning of a line)
# - Send Email to the jmaclean address above if you find any errors.

#***** DEBUG *****
#
# QuickStart:
# This section is of interest mainly to programmers. This is useful if
# you are having problems with DOSEMU and you want to enclose debug info
# when you make bug reports to a member of the DOSEMU development team.
# Simply set desired flags to "on" or "off", then redirect stderr of
# DOSEMU to a file using "dos 2>debug" to record the debug information
# if desired. Skip this section if you're only starting to set up.
#
debug { config off  disk off  warning off  hardware off
port off  read off  general off  IPC off
video off  write off  xms off  ems off
serial off  keyb off  dpmi off
printer off  mouse off
}

#***** MISCELLANEOUS *****
#
# Want startup DOSEMU banner messages? Of course :-)
dosbanner on
#
# timint is necessary for many programs to work.
timint on

#***** KEYBOARD *****
#
# QuickStart:
# With the "layout" keyword, you can specify your country's keyboard
# layout. The following layouts are implemented:
#   finnish      us      dvorak      sf
#   finnish_latin1 uk      sg      sf_latin1
#   gr           dk      sg_latin1  es
#   gr_latin1   dk_latin1 fr      es_latin1
#   be           no      fr_latin1
# The us-layout is selected by default if the "layout" keyword is omitted.
#
# The keyword "keybint" allows more accurate keyboard interrupts,
# It is a bit unstable, but makes keyboard work better when set to "on".
#
# The keyword "rawkeyboard" allows for accurate keyboard emulation for

```

*continues*

**Listing 5.1 Continued**

```

# DOS programs, and is only activated when DOSEMU starts up at the
# console. It only becomes a problem when DOSEMU prematurely exits
# with a "Segmentation Fault" fatal error, because the keyboard would
# have not been reset properly. In that case, you would have to reboot
# your Linux system remotely, or using the RESET button. In reality,
# this should never happen. But if it does, please do report to the
# dosemu development team, of the problem and detailed circumstances,
# we're trying our best! If you don't need near complete keyboard
# emulation (needed by major software package), set it to "off".
#
keyboard { layout us keybint on rawkeyboard on }
# keyboard { layout gr-latin1 keybint on rawkeyboard on }
#
# If DOSEMU speed is unimportant, and CPU time is very valuable to you,
# you may want to set HogThreshold to a non-zero value. This means
# the number of keypress requests in a row before CPU time is given
# away from DOSEMU. A good value to use could be 10000.
# A zero disables CPU hogging detection via keyboard requests.
#
HogThreshold 0

***** SERIAL *****
#
# QuickStart:
# You can specify up to 4 simultaneous serial ports here.
# If more than one ports have the same IRQ, only one of those ports
# can be used at the same time. Also, you can specify the com port,
# base address, irq, and device path! The defaults are:
#   COM1 default is base 0x03F8, irq 4, and device /dev/cua0
#   COM2 default is base 0x02F8, irq 3, and device /dev/cua1
#   COM3 default is base 0x03E8, irq 4, and device /dev/cua2
#   COM4 default is base 0x02E8, irq 3, and device /dev/cua3
# If the "com" keyword is omitted, the next unused COM port is assigned.
# Also, remember, these are only how you want the ports to be emulated
# in DOSEMU. That means what is COM3 on IRQ 5 in real DOS, can become
# COM1 on IRQ 4 in DOSEMU!
#
# Also, as an example of defaults, these two lines are functionally equal:
# serial { com 1 mouse }
# serial { com 1 mouse base 0x03F8 irq 4 device /dev/cua0 }
#
# If you want to use a serial mouse with DOSEMU, the "mouse" keyword
# should be specified in only one of the serial lines. (For PS/2
# mice, it is not necessary, and device path is in mouse line instead.)
#
# Uncomment/modify any of the following if you want to support a modem
# (or any other serial device).
#serial { com 1 device /dev/modem }
#serial { com 2 device /dev/modem }
#serial { com 3 device /dev/modem }
#serial { com 4 device /dev/modem }
#serial { com 3 base 0x03E8 irq 5 device /dev/cua2 }
#

```

```

# If you have a non-PS/2 mouse, uncomment/modify one of the following.
#serial { mouse com 1 device /dev/mouse }
#serial { mouse com 2 device /dev/mouse }
#
# What type is your mouse? Uncomment one of the following.
# Use the 'internaldriver' option with ps2 and busmouse options.
#mouse { microsoft }
#mouse { logitech }
#mouse { mmseries }
#mouse { mouseman }
#mouse { hitachi }
#mouse { mousesystems }
#mouse { busmouse }
#mouse { ps2 device /dev/mouse internaldriver }
# The following line won't run for now, but I hope it will sometime
#mouse { mousesystems device /dev/mouse internaldriver clearldr }

***** NETWORKING SUPPORT *****
#
# Turn the following option 'on' if you require IPX/SPX emulation.
# Therefore, there is no need to load IPX.COM within the DOS session.
# The following option does not emulate LSL.COM, IPXODI.COM, etc.
# NOTE: MUST HAVE IPX PROTOCOL ENABLED IN KERNEL !!
ipxsupport off
#
# Enable Novell 8137->raw 802.3 translation hack in new packet driver.
#pktdriver novell_hack

***** VIDEO *****
#
# !!WARNING!!: A LOT OF THIS VIDEO CODE IS ALPHA! IF YOU ENABLE GRAPHICS
# ON AN INCOMPATIBLE ADAPTOR, YOU COULD GET A BLANK SCREEN OR MESSY SCREEN
# EVEN AFTER EXITING DOSEMU. JUST REBOOT (BLINDLY) AND THEN MODIFY CONFIG.
#
# QuickStart:
# Start with only text video using the following line, to get started.
# then when DOSEMU is running, you can set up a better video configura-
# tion.
#
# video { vga console }      # Use this line, if you are using VGA
# video { cga console }     # Use this line, if you are using CGA
# video { ega console }     # Use this line, if you are using EGA
# video { mda console }     # Use this line, if you are using MDA
#
# Even more basic, like on an xterm or over serial, use one of the
# following :
#
# For Xterm
# video { vga chunks 25 }
# For serial at 2400 baud
# video { vga chunks 200 }
#
# QuickStart Notes for Graphics:
# - If your VGA-Bios resides at E000-EFFF, turn off video BIOS shadow

```

*continues*

**Listing 5.1 Continued**

```

#   for this address range and add the statement vbios_seg 0xe000
#   to the correct vios-statement, see the example below.
#   - Set "allowvideoportaccess on" earlier in this configuration file
#   if DOSEMU won't boot properly, such as hanging with a blank screen,
#   beeping, or the video card bootup message.
#   - Video BIOS shadowing (in your CMOS setup) at C000-CFFF must be dis-
#   abled.
#
#   * > CAUTION < *: TURN OFF VIDEO BIOS SHADOWING BEFORE ENABLING GRAPHICS!
#
#   It may be necessary to set this to "on" if DOSEMU can't boot up properly
#   on your system when it's set "off" and when graphics are enabled.
#   Note: May interfere with serial ports when using certain video boards.
allowvideoportaccess on
#
#   Any 100% compatible standard VGA card _MAY_ work with this:
#video { vga console graphics }
#
#   If your VGA-BIOS is at segment E000, this may work for you:
#video { vga console graphics vbios_seg 0xe000 }
#
#   Trident SVGA with 1 megabyte on board
#video { vga console graphics chipset trident memsize 1024 }
#
#   Diamond SVGA
#video { vga console graphics chipset diamond }
#
#   ET4000 SVGA card with 1 megabyte on board:
#video { vga console graphics chipset et4000 memsize 1024 }
#
#   S3-based SVGA video card with 1 megabyte on board:
#video { vga console graphics chipset s3 memsize 1024 }

***** MISCELLANEOUS *****
#
# QuickStart:
# For "mathco", set this to "on" to enable the coprocessor during DOSEMU.
# This really only has an effect on kernels prior to 1.0.3.
# For "cpu", set this to the CPU you want recognized during DOSEMU.
# For "bootA"/"bootC", set this to the bootup drive you want to use.
# It is strongly recommended you start with "bootA" to get DOSEMU
# going, and during configuration of DOSEMU to recognize hard disks.
#
mathco on      # Math coprocessor valid values: on off
cpu 80386     # CPU emulation valid values: 80286 80386 80486
bootA        # Startup drive valid values: bootA bootC

***** MEMORY *****
#
# QuickStart:
# These are memory parameters, stated in number of kilobytes.
# If you get lots of disk swapping while DOSEMU runs, you should
# reduce these values. Also, DPMI is still somewhat unstable,

```

```
# (as of early April 1994) so be careful with DPMI parameters.
#
xms 1024      # XMS size in K, or "off"
ems 1024      # EMS size in K, or "off"
dpmi off     # DPMI size in K, or "off". Be careful with DPMI!

#***** PORT ACCESS *****
#
# !!WARNING!!: GIVING ACCESS TO PORTS IS BOTH A SECURITY CONCERN AND
# SOME PORTS ARE DANGEROUS TO USE. PLEASE SKIP THIS SECTION, AND
# DON'T FIDDLE WITH THIS SECTION UNLESS YOU KNOW WHAT YOU'RE DOING.
#
# ports { 0x388 0x389 } # for SimEarth
# ports { 0x21e 0x22e 0x23e 0x24e 0x25e 0x26e 0x27e 0x28e 0x29e } # for
# jill

#***** SPEAKER *****
#
# These keywords are allowable on the "speaker" line:
# native  Enable DOSEMU direct access to the speaker ports.
# emulated Enable simple beeps at the terminal.
# off     Disable speaker emulation.
#
speaker native      # or "off" or "emulated"

#***** HARD DISKS *****
#
# !!WARNING!!: DAMAGE MIGHT RESULT TO YOUR HARD DISK (LINUX AND/OR DOS)
# IF YOU FIDDLE WITH THIS SECTION WITHOUT KNOWING WHAT YOU'RE DOING!
#
# QuickStart:
# The best way to get started is to start with a boot floppy, and set
# "bootA" above in the configuration. Keep using the boot floppy
# while you are setting this hard disk configuration up for DOSEMU,
# and testing by using DIR C: or something like that.
# If you want DOSEMU to be able to access a DOS partition, the
# safer type of access is "partition" access, because "wholedisk"
# access gives DOSEMU write access to a whole physical disk,
# including any vulnerable Linux partitions on that drive!
#
# !!! IMPORTANT !!!
# You must not have LILO installed on the partition for dosemu to boot
# off.
# As of 04/26/94, doublespace and stacker 3.1 will work with wholedisk
# or partition only access. Stacker 4.0 has been reported to work with
# wholedisk access. If you want to use disk compression using partition
# access, you will need to use the "mkpartition" command included with
# dosemu to create a partition table datafile for dosemu.
#
# Please read the documentation in the "doc" subdirectory for info
# on how to set up access to real hard disk.
#
# "image" specifies a hard disk image file.
# "partition" specifies partition access, with device and partition
```

*continues*

**Listing 5.1 Continued**

```

# number.
# "wholedisk" specifies full access to entire hard drive.
# "readonly" for read only access. A good idea to set up with.
#
#disk { image "/var/lib/dosemu/hdimage" } # use diskimage file.
#disk { partition "/dev/hda1" 1 readonly } # 1st partition on 1st IDE.
#disk { partition "/dev/sda2" 1 readonly } # 1st partition on 2nd SCSI.
#disk { wholedisk "/dev/hda" } # Entire disk drive unit

***** DOSEMU BOOT*****
#
# Use the following option to boot from the specified file, and then
# once booted, have bootoff execute in autoexec.bat. Thanks Ted :-).
# Notice it follows a typical floppy spec. To create this file use
# dd if=/dev/fd0 of=/var/lib/dosemu/bdisk bs=16k
#
#bootdisk { heads 2 sectors 18 tracks 80 threeinch file /var/lib/dosemu/#bdisk }
#
# Specify extensions for the CONFIG and AUTOEXEC files. If the below
# are uncommented, the extensions become CONFIG.EMU and AUTOEXEC.EMU.
# NOTE: this feature may affect file naming even after boot time.
# If you use MSDOS 6+, you may want to use a CONFIG.SYS menu instead.
#
#EmuSys EMU
#EmuBat EMU

***** FLOPPY DISKS *****
#
# QuickStart:
# This part is fairly easy. Make sure that the first (/dev/fd0) and
# second (/dev/fd1) floppy drives are of the correct size, "threeinch"
# and/or "fiveinch". A floppy disk image can be used instead, however.
#
# FOR SAFETY, UNMOUNT ALL FLOPPY DRIVES FROM YOUR FILESYSTEM BEFORE
# STARTING UP DOSEMU! DAMAGE TO THE FLOPPY MAY RESULT OTHERWISE!
#
floppy { device /dev/fd0 threeinch }
floppy { device /dev/fd1 fiveinch }
#floppy { heads 2 sectors 18 tracks 80
# threeinch file /var/lib/dosemu/diskimage }
#
# If floppy disk speed is very important, uncomment the following
# line. However, this makes the floppy drive a bit unstable. This
# is best used if the floppies are write-protected.
#
#FastFloppy on

***** PRINTERS *****
#
# QuickStart:
# Printer is emulated by piping printer data to a file or via a unix
# command such as "lpr". Don't bother fiddling with this configuration
# until you've got DOSEMU up and running already.
#

```

```
#printer { options "%s" command "lpr" timeout 20 }
#printer { options "-p %s" command "lpr" timeout 10 } # pr format it
#printer { file "lpt3" }
```

You must then use a text editor to change the settings from the example configuration file to match your system. Such items as processor type and video cards must match.

**NOTE** You can also boot DOSEMU from a hard drive partition, instead of from a floppy. To access a hard drive, simply configure a drive/partition in the `dosemu.conf` file. ■

## Running DOSEMU

To run DOSEMU, simply type `dos` at any Linux prompt. To exit, use the `exitemu` command from the prompt. Table 5.9 provides a listing of command-line options you can pass to DOSEMU. You also can use `-?` to get a complete, up-to-date listing of command-line parameters.

**Table 5.9 DOSEMU Command-Line Parameters**

| Parameter | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| -A        | Boot from the A drive  |
| -C        | Boot from the hard drive   |
| -c        | Optimize video performance from virtual terminals  |
| -D        | Set debug options  |
| -e        | Specify the amount of EMS memory   |
| -F#       | Number (#) of floppies to use from <code>dosemu.conf</code>  |
| -f        | Flip the definition of the A and B floppy drives   |
| -H#       | Number (#) of hard disks to use from <code>dosemu.conf</code>  |
| -k        | Use the raw keyboard console defined in the <code>rawkeyboard</code> parameter of <code>dosemu.conf</code> |
| -P        | Copy the debug information to a file   |
| -t        | Deliver the time interrupt 9   |
| -V        | Activate VGA emulation   |
| -x        | Specify the amount of XMS memory   |
| -?        | Display summary help for each command  |
| -2        | Emulate a 286  |
| -3        | Emulate a 386  |
| -4        | Emulate a 486  |



From the DOS prompt supplied by DOSEMU, you can run most DOS programs except those that require DPMI (DOS Protected Mode Interface) support. Simply type the name of the program and—providing that DOSEMU can find the program in your path—DOSEMU will load and run the program.

Table 5.10 shows some of the programs known to operate under Linux, but more are added every day (check the file EMUsuccess.txt, in the directory where DOSEMU was installed, for an up-to-date listing). Table 5.11 lists some of the programs that don't work with Linux.

**Table 5.10 Programs Known to Run with DOSEMU**

| <b>Name</b>     | <b>Function</b>                                  | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b> |
|-----------------|--|------------------------------------|
| 1st Wordplus    | GEM word processor                               | jan@janhh.hanse.de                 |
| 4desc           | 4dos desc editor                                 | piola@di.unito.it                  |
| 4DOS 4.2        | Command interp.                                  | rideau@clipper.ens.fr              |
| 4dos 5.0c       | Command interp.                                  | J1MCPHER@VAXC.<br>STEVENS-TECH.EDU |
| ack3d           | 3-D engine                                       | martin5@trgcorp.<br>solucorp.qc.ca |
| ACU-COBOL       | Compiler   | fjh@munta.cs.mu.OZ.AU              |
| Alite 1.10      |  | ph99jh42@uwrf.edu                  |
| AmTax 93 & 94   | Tax software                                     | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| ansi.sys        | Screen/keyboard<br>driver (display<br>functions) | ag173@cleveland.<br>Freenet.Edu    |
| arj v2.41a      | [Un]archiver                                     | tanner@winternet.<br>mpls.mn.us    |
| As Easy As 5.01 | Spreadsheet                                      | ph99jh42@uwrf.edu                  |
| Autoroute Plus  | Route planner                                    | hsw1@papa.attmail.com              |
| Axum            | Sci. graphics                                    | miguel@pinon.<br>ccu.uniovi.es     |
| battle chess    | Chess game                                       | jvdbbergh@wins.uia.ac.be           |
| Binkley 2.50ebd | Fidomailer                                       | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de  |
| Blake Stone_    | Game   | owaddell@cs.indiana.edu            |
| bnu 1.70        | Fossil (Fido)                                    | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de  |

| <b>Name</b>             | <b>Function</b>   | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b>     |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Borland C++ 2.0         | 86/286 C/C++ IDE  | rideau@clipper.ens.fr                  |
| Boston Business<br>EDT+ |                   | keegstra@cldr2.fsfc.<br>nasa.gov       |
| Cardbox Plus            | Database          | hsw1@papa.attmail.com                  |
| Castle Wolfenstein      | 3-D game          | gt8134b@prism.gatech.EDU               |
| Checkit diagnostics     |                   |  |
| clipper 5.1             | dBASE compiler    | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be                |
| COMPRESS                | Compressed fs     | rideau@clipper.ens.fr                  |
| CCM (Crosstalk)         | Modem program     |  |
| cshow 8.61              | Picture viewer    | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be                |
| cview                   | Picture viewer    | lotov@avarice.ugcs.<br>caltech.edu     |
| d86/a86                 |                   |  |
| DataPerfect 2.1         | Database          | fbennett@uk.ac.ulcc.clus1              |
| Dbase 4                 |                   | corey@amiganet.xnet.com                |
| Derive 1.2              | Math package      | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es         |
| Disk Freedom 4.6        | Disk utility      |  |
| diet 1.45f              | File compression  | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de      |
| dosnix 2.0              | UNIX utilities    | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es         |
| Dosshell task           | Swapper           | jmaclean@fox.nstn.ns.ca                |
| dtmm                    | Molecular models  | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es         |
| Dune 2                  | Game              | COLIN@fs1.in.umist.ac.uk               |
| dviscr                  | EMTEX dvi preview | ub9x@rz.uni-karlsruhe.de               |
| Easytrax                | Layout editor     | maehler@wrcd1.urz.<br>uni-wuppertal.de |
| Elvis                   | vi clone          | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es         |

*continues*

**Table 5.10 Continued**

| <b>Name</b>            | <b>Function</b>           | <b>Success Story Posted by</b>    |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Epic Pinball           | Game                      | krismon@quack.kfu.com             |
| ETen 3.1               | Chinese terminal          | tyuan!root@mp.cs.niu.edu          |
| Eureka 1.0             | Math package              | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es    |
| Falcon 3.0             | Fighter simulator         | rapatel@rockypc.<br>rutgers.edu   |
| FastLST 1.03           | FidoNdlstcompiler         | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de |
| FormGen II             |                           | root@bobspc.canisius.edu          |
| freemacs 1.6d          | Editor                    | ph99jh42@uwrf.edu                 |
| Frontier (Elite II)    | Game                      | COLIN@fs1.in.umist.ac.uk          |
| FW3                    |                           | Sebastian.Bunka@<br>vu-wien.ac.at |
| MS Flight Simulator 5  | Game (runs <i>slow!</i> ) | newcombe@aa.csc.<br>peachnet.edu  |
| Foxpro 2.0             | Database                  |                                   |
| Framework 4            |                           | corey@amiganet.xnet.com           |
| Freelance Graphics 2.1 | Graph/drawing application | jwest@jwest.ecen.<br>okstate.edu  |
| GEM/3                  | GUI                       | jan@janhh.hanse.de                |
| GEM Draw               | GEM drawing app           | jan@janhh.hanse.de                |
| GEM Paint              | GEM painting app          | jan@janhh.hanse.de                |
| gmouse                 | Mouse driver              | tk@pssparc2.oc.com                |
| God of Thunder         | Game                      | ensor@cs.utk.edu                  |
| Gravity                | Simulation package        | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es    |
| GWS for DOS            | Graphic file conv         | bchow@bchow.slip                  |
| Gzip 1.1.2             | File compression          | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es    |
| Harpoon                | Game                      | wielinga@physics.uq.oz.au         |

| <b>Name</b>                            | <b>Function</b>                               | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b> |
|--|---|------------------------------------|
| Harvard Graphics 3.0                   | Graph/drawing package                         | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| Hero's Quest I                         | Game  | lam836@cs.cuhk.hk                  |
| Hijaak 2.0                             | Graphic file conv                             | bchow@bchow.slip                   |
| hocus pocus                            | Apogee game                                   | kooper@dutiws.TWI.<br>TUDelft.NL   |
| Image Alchemy Pro<br>(-v doesn't work) | Graphic file conv                             | J1MCPHER@VAXC.<br>STEVENS-TECH.EDU |
| Incredible Machine                     | Game (slow)                                   | sdh@po.cwru.edu                    |
| Key Spreadsheet<br>Plus                | Spreadsheet (on<br>non-doublespaced<br>disks) | jwest@jwest.ecen.<br>okstate.edu   |
| Lemmings                               |   | sdh@po.cwru.edu                    |
| less 1.7.7                             | More than more                                | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| LHA                                    | File compression                              |                                    |
| Lotus Manuscript                       | Word processor                                | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| Managing Your Money                    | Financial                                     | newcombe@aa.csc.<br>peachnet.edu   |
| Manifest                               | (dies during<br>memory timings)               | hsw1@papa.attmail.com              |
| Mathcad 2.01                           | Math package                                  | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| MathCad 2.06                           | Math package                                  | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| mcafee 9.23 v112                       | Virus scanner                                 | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be            |
| Microemac                              | Editor  | hjstein@MATH.HUJI.AC.IL            |
| MicroLink Yaht 2.1                     |   | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| Microsoft C 6.0                        | Compiler                                      | ronnie@epact.se                    |
| Microsoft<br>Assembler 5.0             | Assembler                                     | ronnie@epact.se                    |
| Microsoft<br>Library 2.0               |   | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |

*continues*

**Table 5.10 Continued**

| <b>Name</b>               | <b>Function</b>    | <b>Success Story Posted by</b>           |
|---------------------------|--------------------|--|
| Microsoft Make            | make               | ronnie@epact.se                          |
| MicrosoftMouse<br>Drv 8.2 | Mouse driver       | hsw1@papa.attmail.com                    |
| MoneyCounts 7.0           | Accounting package | raeburn@cygnus.com                       |
| mscmouse                  | Mouse driver       | tk@pssparc2.oc.com                       |
| nnansi.com                | ANSI driver        | mdrejhon@undergrad.<br>math.uwaterloo.ca |
| Netzplan                  | GEM project mgr    | jan@janhh.hanse.de                       |
| NHL Hockey                | Game               | krismon@quack.kfu.com                    |
| NJStar 2.1                | Chinese word proc  | aab2@cornell.edu                         |
| Norton Utils 4.5          | Disk utils         | rideau@clipper.ens.fr                    |
| Norton Utils 7.0          | Disk utils         | rideau@clipper.ens.fr                    |
| PAF                       | Geneology package  | geek+@CMU.EDU                            |
| Paradox                   | Database           | hp@vmars.tuwien.ac.at                    |
| PC Paintbrush IV          | Paint program      | bchow@bchow.slip                         |
| PCtools 4.20              | Disk utils         | rideau@clipper.ens.fr                    |
| pcwdemo                   |                    | vinod@cse.iitb.ernet.in                  |
| PC-Write 3.0              | Word processor     |  |
| pcxlab 1.03               | PCX viewer         | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es           |
| peachtree<br>complete 6.0 | Accounting         | stjeanp@math.enmu.edu                    |
| Pinball Dreams            | Game               | ronnie@lysator.liu.se                    |
| PKzip/unzip               | File compression   |  |
| pklite 1.15               | File compression   | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de        |
| Pong Kombat               | Game               | ensor@cs.utk.edu                         |
| PrintShop                 | Greeting card pkg  | geek+@CMU.EDU                            |
| Procomm Plus 2.0          | Communication      | newcombe@aa.csc.<br>peachnet.edu         |

| <b>Name</b>                   | <b>Function</b>    | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b> |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| Procomm 2.4.3                 | Communication      | hsw1@papa.attmail.com              |
| Pspice 5.0                    | Circuit sim.       | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| Q&A                           | Word proc/database | newcombe@aa.csc.<br>peachnet.edu   |
| Qbasic/edit<br>(from DOS 5.0) | Interpreter        |                                    |
| Qedit                         | Editor             |                                    |
| QuickC                        | Compiler           | martin@trcsun3.eas.<br>asu.edu     |
| Quicken 4.0 for DOS           | Accounting pkg     | juphoff@nrao.edu                   |
| Quicken 6.0 for DOS           | Accounting pkg     |                                    |
| Quicken 7.0 for DOS           | Accounting pkg     | juphoff@astro.phys.<br>vt.edu      |
| Railroad Tycoon               |                    | juphoff@astro.phys.<br>vt.edu      |
| Red Baron                     | Game               | wielinga@physics.<br>uq.oz.au      |
| RM/COBOL                      | compiler           | fjh@munta.cs.mu.OZ.AU              |
| Rpro 1.6                      |                    | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| scan109                       | Antivirus          | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| scan112                       | Antivirus          | piola@di.unito.it                  |
| Scorch                        | Tank game          | geek+@CMU.EDU                      |
| Shez94                        | Arcer-Shell        | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de  |
| sled                          | Editor             | piola@di.unito.it                  |
| Space Quest IV                | Game               | lam836@cs.cuhk.hk                  |
| Spell Casting 301             |                    | mancini@phantom.com                |
| SPSS/PC+4.0                   | Statistical pkg    | jr@petz.han.de                     |
| Squish 1.01                   | Fido Scan/Tosser   | stub@linux.rz.tu-<br>clausthal.de  |

*continues*

**Table 5.10 Continued**

| <b>Name</b>         | <b>Function</b>   | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b>                     |
|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| Stacker 3.1         | Compressed fs     | <b>mdrejhon@undergrad<br/>math.uwaterloo.ca</b>        |
| Stacker 4.00        | Compressed fs     | <b>J1MCPHER@VAXC.<br/>STEVENS-TECH.EDU</b>             |
| StatPhys            | Simulation pkg    | <b>miguel@pinon.ccu.<br/>uniovi.es</b>                 |
| STSORBIT            | Orbit simulation  | <b>troch@gandalf.rutgers.edu</b>                       |
| Stunts              | Game?             | <b>gt8134b@prism.gatech.EDU</b>                        |
| Superstor           | Compressed fs     | <b>rideau@clipper.ens.fr</b>                           |
| TAG 2.02            | Polish word proc  | <b>rzm@oso.chalmers.se</b>                             |
| TASM 2.51           | MACRO assembler   | <b>rideau@clipper.ens.fr</b>                           |
| Telix               | Modem program     | <b>jou@nematic.ep.<br/>nctu.edu.tw</b>                 |
| THelp from BC++2.0  | Popup help        | <b>rideau@clipper.ens.fr</b>                           |
| TimED/beta          | Fido MSGeditor    | <b>stub@linux.rz.tu-clausthal.de</b>                   |
| TLINK 4.0           | LINKER            | <b>rideau@clipper.ens.fr</b>                           |
| Topspeed Modula-2   | Compiler          | <b>mayersn@hermes.<br/>informatik.uni-stuttgart.de</b> |
| Turbo Debugger 2.51 | Realmode debugger | <b>rideau@clipper.ens.fr</b>                           |
| Turbo Pascal 5.5    | Compiler          |  |
| Turbo Pascal 6.0    | Compiler          | <b>t2262dj@cd1.lrz-<br/>muenchen.de</b>                |
| Turbo Pascal 7.0    | Compiler          | <b>mdrejhon@undergrad.<br/>math.uwaterloo.ca</b>       |
| Turb-opoly 1.43     |                   | <b>root@bobspc.canisius.edu</b>                        |
| Ultima 6            | Game              | <b>msphil@birds.wm.edu</b>                             |
| Vpic 6.1            |                   | <b>root@bobspc.canisius.edu</b>                        |
| warlords II         | Game              | <b>buckel@cip.<br/>informatik.uni-wuerzburg.de</b>     |
| Warrior of Destiny  | Game              | <b>msphil@birds.wm.edu</b>                             |
| WTTWI Carmen        | Game              | <b>tillemaj@cae.wisc.edu</b>                           |

| <b>Name</b>     | <b>Function</b>                   | <b>Success Story<br/>Posted by</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sandiego        |                                   |                                    |
| Windows 3.0     | Windows (real mode)               | cjw1@ukc.ac.uk                     |
| Wolf3d          | Game                              | owaddell@cs.indiana.edu            |
| WordPerfect 5.1 | Word processor                    | sdh@po.cwru.edu                    |
| WordPerfect 6.0 | Word processor<br>(needs >1M RAM) | lujian@texmd.minnet.<br>mcgill.ca  |
| Xtpro 1.1       | Disk util                         | root@bobspc.canisius.edu           |
| XWing           | Game (very slow)                  | ronnie@lysator.liu.se              |
| Zarkov 2.6      | Chess                             | a-acero@uchicago.edu               |
| zoo             | File compression                  |                                    |

**Table 5.11 Programs Known Not to Run with DOSEMU**

| <b>Name</b>                             | <b>Function</b>     | <b>Posted By</b>                   |
|---|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| 4D-box                                  | Boxing game         | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be            |
| Apple ][ emulator                       | Emulator            | ph99jh42@uwrf.edu                  |
| Borland C++ 3.1 IDE                     | Compiler            | juphoff@uppieland.<br>async.vt.edu |
| brief                                   | Editor              | bchow@bchow.slip                   |
| Chuck Yeager<br>Aircombat               | Flight<br>simulator | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be            |
| CIVILIZATION                            | Game                | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| DesqView 2.51<br>(Alt key doesn't work) |                     | hsw1@papa.attmail.com              |
| doom                                    | Game                | rideau@clipper.ens.fr              |
| dpms from<br>Stacker 4.0                |                     | J1MCPHER@VAXC.<br>STEVENS-TECH.EDU |
| dxma0mod.sys                            | Token-ring driver   | adjihc4@cti.ecp.fr                 |
| dxmc0mod.sys                            | Token-ring driver   | adjihc4@cti.ecp.fr                 |
| ELDB                                    | Economics database  | hjstein@math.huji.ac.il            |

*continues*



**Table 5.11 Continued**

| <b>Name</b>              | <b>Function</b>                    | <b>Posted By</b>                   |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| FIPS 0.2.2               | Disk util<br>(hdimage FAT problem) |                                    |
| Howitzer                 | Tank game                          | geek+@CMU.EDU                      |
| Lahey Fortran            | Fortran compiler                   | hjstein@math.huji.ac.il            |
| Maple V2                 | Math package                       | ralf@ark.btbg.sub.de               |
| MSDOS 5/6<br>QBASIC/EDIT | Editor                             | bchow@bchow.slip                   |
| NORTON UTILITIES<br>7.0  | Disk utils                         | bchow@bchow.slip                   |
| Quattro Pro 4.0          | Spreadsheet                        | jwest@jwest.ecen.<br>okstate.edu   |
| Raptor                   | Game                               | ensor@cs.utk.edu                   |
| Silent Service II        | Submarine game                     | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be            |
| thunderByte scan         | Virus scanner                      | jvdbergh@wins.uia.ac.be            |
| Ventura Publisher<br>3.0 | Desktop pub                        | niemann@swt.ruhr-<br>uni-bochum.de |
| wildunix                 | Wild cards                         | miguel@pinon.ccu.<br>uniovi.es     |
| Windows 3.1              |                                    | juphoff@uppieland.<br>async.vt.edu |

Running programs under DOSEMU has several problems, mostly because the computer is emulating DOS and the underlying machine instead of actually running DOS. Emulation slows down the system. The slowdown can become annoying, especially when you're also running other Linux programs in other virtual terminals. Video updates are also rather slow under DOSEMU.

Many DOS programs hog the CPU, because they believe they're the only program running. This prevents other Linux programs from receiving access to the CPU. To alleviate this problem, Thomas G. McWilliams wrote a program called garrot to release access of the processor back to Linux from DOS-hogging programs. You can find garrot on the [sunsite.unc.edu](http://sunsite.unc.edu) FTP site in the /pub/linux/alpha/dosemu directory.

# Running Windows Programs Under Linux

DOSEMU can't run Microsoft Windows programs, so the Linux community has embarked on creating a program that will allow Linux users to run such programs. This Windows emulator is called Wine. Wine isn't a standard acronym; it can stand as WINdows Emulator or, because Wine can be built as a static library instead of an emulator, Wine Is Not a Windows Emulator. Both acronyms are from the Windows FAQ.

The Windows FAQ is required reading if you want to experiment with Wine, because Wine isn't as far along in development as DOSEMU. Thus, it's very experimental and error-prone. Also, not many Windows programs are supported. In fact, to use Wine, you must have Windows installed on a partition accessible to Linux, because Wine still relies on many parts of Windows to work. Wine also requires the X system to be installed and operational.

To experiment with Wine, you'll need the following:

- A Linux kernel, version 99.13 or above
- Source code for Wine, because it's available only in source code format
- The `d` package installed for the compiler tools to build the source code
- At least 8M of RAM and at least a 12M swap drive
- At least 10M of disk space
- X Windows installed and configured
- A pointing device such as a mouse
- Microsoft Windows installed on a partition accessible to Linux

Because Wine is under heavy development, new versions are released almost weekly. The newest source code is located at [sunsite.unc.edu](http://sunsite.unc.edu) (and other major FTP sites) in the `/pub/Linux/ALPHA/wine/development` directory. The file is named after the date of its release—for example, `wine-961201.tar.tgz`.

► See "Using FTP for Remote File Transfer," p. 540

Because Wine is changing so fast and is so unstable, it's not included on the accompanying CD-ROMs. If you want to experiment with Wine, feel free to download the newest files and read over the FAQs and HOWTOs. These documents are located on the CD-ROM in the `/docs` directory and provide the information needed to compile, install, configure, and use Wine.

Installing Wine is very similar to installing DOSEMU, with the exception that you can place the source tar file anywhere. Use the `tar` command to unarchive the file in the directory—for example,

```
[root@web wine]# gzip -d 950606.tar.gz
[root@web wine]# tar -xvf 950606.tar
```

Building Wine is a little more involved than building DOSEMU—in fact, it's more like building a new kernel. You must answer several questions to configure the build process. The Wine HOWTO explains the full process in detail.

Part

1

Ch

5

Next, you must answer several questions to configure Wine with runtime parameters. These configuration parameters are stored in a file named `/usr/local/etc/wine.conf`. Although you can edit this file by hand, it's best to use the supplied configure program to do so.

After you configure the compilation files and the runtime parameter file, you can build Wine with the simple command `make`. This process takes several minutes. To use Wine, you invoke the emulator and provide the path name to a Windows executable file—for example,

```
[tackett@web ~]
```

```
$wine /dos/windows/winmine.exe
```

The programs now supported by Wine are `calc.exe`, `clock.exe`, `notepad.exe`, and `winmine.exe`. This list is continuously expanding, so check the FAQ and HOWTO for current programs supported by the Windows emulator.

**NOTE** MS-DOS and Microsoft Windows aren't the only operating systems emulated under Linux.

There are also emulators for the old Apple II, CPM, and the newer Macintosh operating systems. You can generally find these emulators on FTP sites in the `\pub\Linux\system\emulators` directory. ■

## From Here...

This chapter has just lightly touched on getting started with Linux and the various application programs available. For more information, see the following chapters:

- Chapter 7, “Using X Windows,” deals with the graphical user interface provided with Linux, XFree86.
- Chapter 13, “Upgrading and Installing Software,” explains how to install new software from CD-ROM or the Internet.
- Chapter 19, “Using the *vi* Editor,” and Chapter 20, “Using the *emacs* Editor,” discuss two of the more popular text editors for Linux.

---

## Managing the File System

- 14 Managing File Systems 261
- 15 Understanding the File and Directory System 287
- 16 Managing Files and Directories 301

# Managing File Systems

**F**ile systems form the basis for all data on a Linux system. Linux programs, libraries, system files, and user files all reside on file systems. Proper management of file systems is critical because all your data and programs exist on top of file systems.

Many of the steps outlined in this chapter are performed automatically when you install Linux. However, you should learn to manage your file systems so that you can create, manage, and maintain your Linux system. Understanding file system management is critical to successful systems administration. Your file system must work properly for your Linux system to work at all. ■

## Understanding file systems

File systems are directories created on hard drives, floppies, or CD-ROMs. File systems can also be available over the network.

## Mounting and unmounting file systems

To access a file system, you must make its existence known to Linux by mounting the file system to a mount point.

## Working with the Network File System (NFS)

NFS allows Linux to access file systems on remote machines as though they were on the local hard drive.

## Maintaining file systems

Over time, Linux file systems can become stale or corrupted, and thus need to be maintained.

## Creating and formatting file systems

You must create and format file systems as new hard drives are added.

## Using swap files and partitions

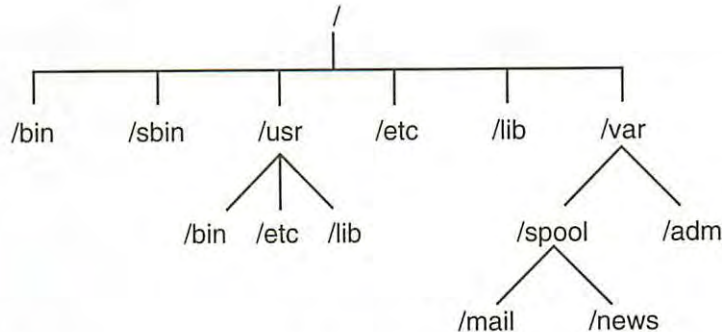
To take advantage of virtual memory, Linux needs *swap space*—disk space the system uses as memory when physical RAM is exhausted.

## Understanding File Systems

Under Linux, the file space that's visible to users is based on a tree structure, with the root at the top. The various directories and files in this space branch downward from the root. The top directory, /, is known as the *root directory*. Figure 14.1 gives a graphical example of a tree structure.

**FIG. 14.1**

Picture the Linux file system as an upside-down tree, with the root at the top and the branches and leaves spreading downward.



To users, this directory tree looks like a seamless entity—they just see directories and files. In reality, many of the directories in the file tree are physically located as different partitions on a disk, on different disks, or even on different computers. When one of these disk partitions is attached to the file tree at a directory known as a *mount point*, the mount point and all directories below it are referred to as a *file system*.

The Linux operating system is made up of several directories and many different files. Depending on how you selected your installation, these directories may be different file systems. Typically, most of the operating system resides on two file systems: the root file system, known as /, and a file system mounted under /usr (pronounced as “user”).

If you change directories to the root directory with the `cd /` command and ask for a directory listing, you see several directories. These make up the contents of the root file system and provide the mount points for other file systems as well.

The /bin directory contains executable programs, known as *binaries*. (In fact, the directory named /bin is short for *binary*.) These programs are essential system files. Many Linux commands, such as `ls`, are actually programs found in this directory.

The /sbin directory is also used to store system binary files. Most files in this directory are used for system administration purposes.

The /etc directory is very important, containing many of the Linux system configuration files. Essentially, these files give your Linux system its “personality.” The password file, `passwd`, is found here, as is the list of file systems to mount at startup, `fstab`. Also, this directory contains the startup scripts for Linux, the list of hosts with IP addresses that you want permanently recorded, and many other types of configuration information.

The shared libraries that programs use when they run are stored in the `/lib` directory. By using shared libraries, many programs can reuse the same code, and these libraries can be stored in a common place, thus reducing the size of your programs at run time.

The `/dev` directory contains special files known as *device files*, which are used to access all the different types of hardware on your system. For example, the `/dev/mouse` file is for reading input from the mouse. By organizing access to hardware devices in this way, Linux effectively makes the interface to a hardware device look like any other piece of software. This means that you, in many cases, can use the same syntax that you use with software to perform operations on computer hardware devices. For example, to create a tape archive of your home directory on a floppy drive, you can use the following command:

```
tar -cdf /dev/fd0 ~tackett
```

Many of the devices in the `/dev` directory are in logical groups. Table 14.1 lists some of the most commonly used devices in the `/dev` directory.

**Table 14.1 Some of the Most Commonly Used Devices in the `/dev` Directory**

| Device File               | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>/dev/console</code> | The <i>system console</i> , which is the computer monitor physically connected to your Linux system.   |
| <code>/dev/hd</code>      | The device driver interface to IDE hard drives. The <code>/dev/hda1</code> device refers to the first partition on hard drive <code>hda</code> . The device <code>/dev/hda</code> refers to the entire hard disk <code>hda</code> .  |
| <code>/dev/sd</code>      | The device driver interface for SCSI disks. The same conventions for SCSI disks and partitions apply as they do to the IDE <code>/dev/hd</code> devices.   |
| <code>/dev/fd</code>      | Device drivers that provide support for floppy drives. <code>/dev/fd0</code> is the first floppy drive and <code>/dev/fd1</code> is the second floppy drive.   |
| <code>/dev/st</code>      | The device driver for SCSI tape drives.  |
| <code>/dev/tty</code>     | Device drivers that provide different consoles for user input. The name comes from when terminals known as <i>teletypes</i> were physically hooked to a UNIX system. Under Linux, these files provide support for the virtual consoles that can be accessed by pressing <code>&lt;Alt-F1&gt;</code> through <code>&lt;Alt-F6&gt;</code> . These virtual consoles provide separate simultaneous local login sessions. |
| <code>/dev/pty</code>     | Device drivers that provide support for pseudo-terminals, which are used for remote login sessions such as login sessions using Telnet.  |
| <code>/dev/ttyS</code>    | The serial interface ports on your computer. <code>/dev/ttyS0</code> corresponds to COM1 under MS-DOS. If you have a serial mouse, <code>/dev/mouse</code> is a symbolic link to the appropriate <code>ttyS</code> device that your mouse is connected to.   |
| <code>/dev/cua</code>     | Special call-out devices used with modems.   |

*continues*

**Table 14.1 Continued**

| Device File | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| /dev/null   | A very special device—essentially a black hole. All data written to /dev/null is lost forever. This can be very useful if you want to run a command and throw away the standard output or the standard error. Also, if /dev/null is used as an input file, a file of zero length is created. |

The /proc directory is actually a virtual file system. It's used to read process information from memory.

The /tmp directory is used to store temporary files that programs create when running. If you have a program that creates a lot of large temporary files, you may want to mount the /tmp directory as a separate file system rather than just have it as a directory on the root file system. If /tmp is left as a directory on the root file system and has lots of large files written to it, the root file system can fill up.

The /home directory is the base directory for user home directories. It's common to mount this as a separate file system so that users can have plenty of room for their files. In fact, if you have many users on your system, you may need to separate /home into several file systems. To do so, you could create subdirectories such as /home/staff and /home/admin for staff members and administrators, respectively. Mount each of these as different file systems and then create the users' home directories under them.

The /var directory holds files that tend to change in size over time. Typically, various system log files are located below this directory. The /var/spool directory and its subdirectories are used to hold data that's of a transitory nature, such as mail and news that's recently received from or queued for transmission to another site.

**TIP**

You can create other mount points under the / directory if you want. You might want to create a mount point named /cdrom if you routinely mount CD-ROMs on your system.

The /usr directory and its subdirectories are very important to the operation of your Linux system. It contains several directories with some of the most important programs on your system. Typically, subdirectories of /usr contain the large software packages that you install. Table 14.2 discusses some of the /usr subdirectories. The /usr directory is almost always mounted as a separate file system.

**Table 14.2 Important Subdirectories in the /usr File System**

| Subdirectory | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| /usr/bin     | This directory holds many of the executable programs found on your Linux system. |
| /usr/etc     | This directory contains many miscellaneous system configuration files.           |



| Subdirectory                  | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>/usr/include</code>     | Here and in the subdirectories of <code>/usr/include</code> is where you find all the include files for the C compiler. These header files define constants and functions and are critical for C programming.   |
| <code>/usr/g++-include</code> | This directory contains the include files for the C++ compiler.   |
| <code>/usr/lib</code>         | This directory contains various libraries for programs to use during linking.   |
| <code>/usr/man</code>         | This directory contains the various manual pages for programs on your Linux system. Below <code>/usr/man</code> are several directories that correspond to the different sections of the man pages.   |
| <code>/usr/src</code>         | This directory contains directories that hold the source code for different programs on your system. If you get a package that you want to install, <code>/usr/src/package_name</code> is a good place to put the source before you install it.   |
| <code>/usr/local</code>       | This directory is designed for local customizations to your system. In general, much of your local software is installed in this directory's subdirectories. The format of this directory varies on almost every UNIX system you look at. One way to set it up is to have a <code>/usr/local/bin</code> for binaries, a <code>/usr/local/etc</code> for configuration files, a <code>/usr/local/lib</code> for libraries, and a <code>/usr/local/src</code> for source code. The entire <code>/usr/local</code> directory tree can be mounted as a separate file system if you need a lot of room for it. |

## Mounting and Unmounting File Systems

By now, you should have a good feel for what a file system is. So how do you set up a directory as a separate file system?

To mount a file system in the Linux directory tree, you must have a physical disk partition, CD-ROM, or floppy disk that you want to mount. You also must make sure that the directory to which you want to attach the file system, known as the *mount point*, actually exists.

Mounting a file system doesn't create the mount point directory. The mount point must exist before you try to mount the file system. Suppose that you want to mount the CD-ROM in drive `/dev/sr0` under the mount point `/mnt`. A directory named `/mnt` must exist, or the mount fails. After you mount the file system under that directory, all the files and subdirectories on the file system appear under the `/mnt` directory. Otherwise, the `/mnt` directory is empty.

### TIP

Use `df .` if you need to know on which file system the current directory is located. The command's output shows the file system as well as the free space available.

Part

III

Ch

14

## Mounting File Systems Interactively

As you may have guessed by now, Linux uses the `mount` command to mount a file system. The syntax of the `mount` command is

```
mount device mountpoint
```

*device* is the physical device that you want to mount; *mountpoint* is the point in the file system tree where you want it to appear.

**NOTE** The `mount` command can be used only by superusers. This is to help ensure system security. Several software packages are available that allow users to mount specific file systems, especially floppy disks. ■

`mount` accepts several command-line arguments in addition to the two mentioned above (see Table 14.3). If a needed command isn't given, `mount` attempts to figure it out from the `/etc/fstab` file.

**Table 14.3 Command-Line Arguments for the *mount* Command**

| Argument                  | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| -f                        | Causes everything to be done except for the actual mount system call. This “fakes” mounting the file system.  |
| -v                        | Verbose mode; provides additional information about what <code>mount</code> is trying to do.  |
| -w                        | Mounts the file system with read and write permissions.   |
| -r                        | Mounts the file system with read-only permission.   |
| -n                        | Mounts without writing an entry in the <code>/etc/mtab</code> file.   |
| -t <i>type</i>            | Specifies the type of the file system being mounted. Valid types are <code>minux</code> , <code>ext</code> , <code>ext2</code> , <code>xiafs</code> , <code>msdos</code> , <code>hpfs</code> , <code>proc</code> , <code>nfs</code> , <code>umsdos</code> , <code>sysv</code> , and <code>iso9660</code> (the default). |
| -a                        | Causes <code>mount</code> to try to mount all file systems in <code>/etc/fstab</code> .   |
| -o <i>list_of_options</i> | When followed by a comma-separated list of options, causes <code>mount</code> to apply the options specified to the file system being mounted. Many options are available here; for a complete list, refer to the <code>mount</code> man page.  |

**NOTE** Several forms of the `mount` command are very common. `mount /dev/hdb3 /mnt` mounts the hard-disk partition `/dev/hdb3` under the directory `/mnt`. `mount -r -t iso9660 /dev/sr0 /mnt` mounts the SCSI CD-ROM drive `/dev/sr0`, which is read-only and of the ISO 9660 file format under the directory `/mnt`. `mount -vat nfs` mounts all the NFS file systems listed in the `/etc/fstab` file. ■

**TIP**

If a file system doesn't mount correctly, use the command `mount -vf device mountpoint` to see what `mount` is doing. This gives a verbose listing and tells `mount` to do everything except mount the file system. This way, you can fake out the `mount` command and get a lot of information about what it's trying to do.

## Mounting File Systems at Boot Time

Under most circumstances, the file systems that your Linux system uses won't change frequently. For this reason, you can easily specify a list of file systems that Linux mounts when it boots and that it unmounts when it shuts down. These file systems are listed in a special configuration file named `/etc/fstab`, for *file system table*.

The `/etc/fstab` file lists the file systems to be mounted, one file system per line. The fields in each line are separated by spaces or tabs. Table 14.4 lists the different fields in the `/etc/fstab` file.

**Table 14.4 Fields in the `/etc/fstab` File**

| Field                 | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| File system specifier | Specifies the block special device or the remote file system to be mounted.   |
| Mount point           | Specifies the mount point for the file system. For special file systems such as swap files, use the word <code>none</code> , which makes swap files active but not visible within the file tree.  |
| Type                  | <p>Gives the file system type of the specified file system. Now, the following types of file systems are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <code>minix</code>, a local file system supporting file names of 14 or 30 characters</li> <li>● <code>ext</code>, a local file system with longer file names and larger inodes (this file system has been replaced by the <code>ext2</code> file system and should no longer be used)</li> <li>● <code>ext2</code>, a local file system with longer file names, larger inodes, and other features</li> <li>● <code>xiafs</code>, a local file system</li> <li>● <code>msdos</code>, a local file system for MS-DOS partitions</li> <li>● <code>hpfs</code>, a local file system for OS/2 High Performance File System partitions</li> <li>● <code>iso9660</code>, a local file system used for CD-ROM drives</li> <li>● <code>nfs</code>, a file system for mounting partitions from remote systems</li> </ul> |

**Table 14.4 Continued**

| Field          | Description  |
|----------------|--|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● swap, a disk partition or special file used for swapping</li> <li>● umsdos, a UMSDOS file system</li> <li>● sysv, a System V file system</li> </ul>   |
| Mount Options  | A comma-separated list of mount options for the file system. At a minimum, it must contain the type of mount for the file system. See the mount man page for more information on mount options.  |
| Dump Frequency | Specifies how often the file system should be backed up by the dump command. If this field isn't present, dump assumes that the file system doesn't need to be backed up.  |
| Pass Number    | Specifies in what order the file systems should be checked by the fsck command when the system is booted. The root file system should have a value of 1. All other file systems should have a value of 2. If a value isn't specified, the file system won't be checked for consistency at boot time. |

**TIP**

It's recommended that you mount your file systems at boot time via the /etc/fstab file instead of by using the mount command. Remember, only superusers can use mount.

The following is a sample fstab file:

```
# device      directory    type    options
/dev/hda1    /            ext2    defaults
/dev/hda2    /usr        ext2    defaults
/dev/hda3    none        swap    sw
/dev/sda1    /dos        msdos   defaults
/proc        /proc       proc    none
```

In this sample file, you can see several different file systems. First, notice that comments in the file are prefixed by a # character. In this fstab file, two normal Linux file systems are mounted—the disk partitions /dev/hda1 and /dev/hda2. These are listed as being of type ext2 and are mounted under the root directory, / and /usr respectively.

The entry defaults listed under the options field indicates that this file system should be mounted by using a common set of default options. Specifically, the file system is mounted read/write enabled, it's to be interpreted as a block special device, all file I/O should be done asynchronously, the execution of binaries is permitted, the file system can be mounted with the mount -a command, the set UID (user ID) and set GID (group ID) bits on files are interpreted on this file system, and ordinary users aren't allowed to mount this file system. As you can see, it's a lot easier just to type **defaults** for the option instead.

► See "Creating the Swap Partition," pp. 60 and 97

The partition `/dev/hda3` is a swap partition that's used for kernel virtual-memory swap space. Its mount point is specified as `none` because you don't want it to appear in the file system tree. It still has to be in the `/etc/fstab` file, so the system knows where it's physically located. Swap partitions are also mounted with the option `sw`.

The `/proc` file system is a virtual file system that points to the process information space in memory. As you can see, it doesn't have a corresponding physical partition to mount.

**TIP**

For full information on all options available in the `/etc/fstab` file, refer to the man page for `fstab`.

MS-DOS file systems can also be mounted automatically. The partition `/dev/sda1` is the first partition on the SCSI hard drive `sda`. It's mounted as an MS-DOS partition by specifying `msdos` as the type and by giving `/dosc` as its mount point. You can place the mount point for the MS-DOS file system anywhere—there's no requirement that it be under the root directory.

## Unmounting File Systems

Now that you know all sorts of stuff about mounting file systems, it's time to look at how to unmount. You use the `umount` command to unmount file systems. You would want to unmount a file system for several reasons: so that you can check/repair a file system with `fsck`, unmount NFS-mounted file systems in case of network problems, or unmount a file system on a floppy drive.

**NOTE** This command is `umount`, not “unmount.” Make sure that you type it correctly. ❗

There are three basic forms of the `umount` command:

```
umount device ! mountpoint
```

```
umount -a
```

```
umount -t fstype
```

*device* is the name of the physical device to unmount; *mountpoint* is the mount point directory name (specify only one or the other). The `umount` command has only two command-line parameters: `-a` unmounts all file systems, and `-t fstype` acts only on file systems of the type specified.

**CAUTION**

The `umount` command doesn't unmount a file system that's in use. For example, if you have some file system mounted under `/mnt` and you try

```
cd /mnt
```

*continues*

Part

III

Ch

14

*continued***umount /mnt**

you get an error telling you that the file system is busy. You have to change to a different directory in another file system to unmount the file system mounted under /mnt.

## Understanding the Network File System

The Network File System (NFS) is a system that allows you to mount file systems from a different computer over a TCP/IP network. Under NFS, a file system on a remote computer is mounted locally and looks just like a local file system to users. The illusion of being mounted locally has numerous uses. For example, you can have one machine on your network with a lot of disk space acting as a file server. This computer has all the home directories of all your users on its local disks. By mounting these disks via NFS on all your other computers, your users can access their home directories from any computer.

NFS has three essential components:

- The computers with the file systems that you want to NFS mount must be able to communicate with each other via a TCP/IP network.
- The computer with the file system that you're interested in as a local file system must make that file system available to be mounted. This computer is known as the *server*, and the process of making the file system available is known as *exporting the file system*.
- The computer that wants to mount the exported file system, known as the *client*, must mount the file system as an NFS file system via the `/etc/fstab` file at boot time or interactively via the `mount` command.

The following sections discuss exporting the file system and mounting it locally.

### Exporting an NFS File System

For clients to mount an NFS file system, this file system must be made available by the server. Before the file system can be made available, you must ensure that it's mounted on the server. If the file system is always going to an NFS exported file system, you should make sure that you have it listed in the `/etc/fstab` file on the server so that it automatically mounts when the server boots.

When you have the file system mounted locally, you can make it available via NFS. This is a two-step process. First, you must make sure that the NFS daemons `rpc.mountd` and `rpc.nfsd` are running on your server. These daemons are usually started from the startup `/etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs` script. Usually, all that's needed is to make sure that the following lines are in your script:

```
daemon rpc.mountd
daemon rpc.nfsd
```

**NOTE** As RPC-based programs, the `rpc.mountd` and `rpc.nfsd` daemons aren't managed by the `inetd` daemon but are started up at boot time, registering themselves with the `portmap` daemon. You must be sure to start them only after `rpc.portmap` is running. ■

Second, you must enter the NFS file system in a configuration file named `/etc/exports`. This file contains information about what file systems can be exported, what computers are allowed to access them, and what type and level of access is permitted.

## Understanding the `/etc/exports` File

The `/etc/exports` file is used by the `mountd` and `nfsd` daemons to determine what file systems are to be exported and what restrictions are placed on them. File systems are listed in `/etc/exports`, one per line. The format of each line is the name of the mount point for a local file system, followed by a list of computers that are allowed to mount this file system. A comma-separated list of mount options in parentheses may follow each name in the list. Table 14.5 lists the mount options available in the `/etc/exports` file.

**Table 14.5 Mount Options Available in the `/etc/exports` File**

| Option                      | Description   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>insecure</code>       | Permits non-authenticated access from this machine.   |
| <code>secure</code>         | Requires secure RPC authentication from this machine.   |
| <code>root_squash</code>    | Maps any requests from root, UID 0 on the client, to the UID NOBODY_UID on the server.  |
| <code>no_root_squash</code> | Doesn't map any requests from UID 0 (default behavior).   |
| <code>ro</code>             | Mounts the file system as read-only (default behavior).   |
| <code>rw</code>             | Mounts the file system as read-write.   |
| <code>link_relative</code>  | Converts absolute symbolic links (where the link contents start with a slash) into relative links by prefixing the link with the necessary number of <code>../</code> characters to get from the directory containing the link to the root on the server. |
| <code>link_absolute</code>  | Leaves all symbolic links as they are (normal behavior for Sun NFS servers). This is the default behavior for Linux.  |
| <code>map_daemon</code>     | Maps local and remote names and numeric IDs by using an <code>lname/uid</code> map daemon on the client where the NFS request originated. Used to map between the client and server UID spaces.   |
| <code>all-squash</code>     | Maps all uids and gids to the anonymous user. This option is useful for NFS-exported public directories, such as those housing FTP and news.  |

*continues*

**Table 14.5 Continued**

| Option                     | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>no-all-squash</code> | The opposite of the <code>all-squash</code> option. This is the default option for Linux.  |
| <code>squash-uids</code>   | Specifies a list of uids subject to anonymous mappings. A valid list of ids looks like this:<br><code>squash_uids=0-15,20,25-50</code> |
| <code>squash-gids</code>   | Specifies a list of gids subject to anonymous mappings. A valid list of ids looks like this:<br><code>squash_gids=0-15,20,25-50</code> |
| <code>anonuid</code>       | Sets the uid for the anonymous account. This option is useful for PC/NFS clients.  |
| <code>anongid</code>       | Sets the gid for the anonymous account. This option is useful for PC/NFS clients.  |
| <code>noaccess</code>      | Used to exclude certain subdirectories from a client. Makes everything below the directory inaccessible to the client.                 |

Here is a sample `/etc/exports` file:

```
/home          bill.tristar.com(rw) fred.tristar.com(rw)
↳george.tristar.com(rw)
/usr/local/bin  *.tristar.com(ro)
/projects      develop.tristar.com(rw) bill.tristar.com(ro)
/pub          (ro,insecure,root_quash)
```

In this example, the server exports four different file systems. `/home` is mounted with read/write access on three different computers: `bill`, `fred`, and `george`. This indicates the directory probably holds user home directories because of the directories' names. The `/usr/local/bin` file system is exported as read-only with access allowed for every computer in the `tristar.com` domain.

The `/projects` file system is exported with read/write access for the computer `develop.tristar.com` but with read-only access for `bill.tristar.com`.

For the `/pub` file system, there's no list of hosts that are allowed access. This means that any host is allowed to mount this file system. It has been exported as read-only, non-authenticated access allowed, and the server remaps any request from root on a remote machine that accesses this file system.

## Mounting NFS File Systems

Mounting an NFS file system is similar to mounting any other type of file system. You can mount NFS file systems from the `/etc/fstab` file at boot time or interactively via the `mount` command.



**CAUTION**

You must be sure to separate the host name and file/system/path portions of the remote file system name with a colon, such as

```
mailserver:/var/spool/mail
```

when using the `mount` command or when making an entry in `/etc/fstab`. If you don't separate the host name from the directory, your system won't mount the remote directory correctly.

**Mounting NFS File Systems via `/etc/fstab`** When you specify an NFS file system in the `/etc/fstab` file, you identify the file system with the format

```
hostname:/file/system/path
```

`hostname` is the name of the server where the file system is located; `/file/system/path` is the file system on the server.

The file-system type is specified as `nfs` in the mount options field of the file system entry. Table 14.6 lists the most commonly used mount options.

**Table 14.6 Commonly Used Options for NFS Mounts**

| Option               | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>rsize=n</code> | Specifies the datagram size in bytes used by the NFS clients on read requests. The default value is 1,024 bytes.             |
| <code>wsizе=n</code> | Specifies the datagram size in bytes used by the NFS clients on write requests. The default value is 1,024 bytes.            |
| <code>timeo=n</code> | Sets the time, in tenths of a second, that the NFS client waits for a request to complete. The default value is 0.7 seconds. |
| <code>hard</code>    | Mounts this file system by using a hard mount. This is the default behavior.   |
| <code>soft</code>    | Mounts this file system by using a soft mount.   |
| <code>intr</code>    | Allows signals to interrupt an NFS call. This is useful for aborting an operation when an NFS server doesn't respond.        |

**Hard Mounts vs. Soft Mounts**

*Hard mounts* and *soft mounts* determine how an NFS client behaves when an NFS server stops responding. NFS file systems are hard-mounted by default. With either type of mount, if a server stops responding, the client waits until the timeout value specified by the `timeo` option expires and then resends the request (this is known as a *minor timeout*). If the requests to the server continue to time out and the total timeout reaches 60 seconds, a *major timeout* occurs.

If a file system is hard mounted, the client prints a message to the console and starts the mount requests all over again by using a timeout value that's twice that of the previous cycle. This has the

Part

III

Ch

14

*continues*

*continued*

potential to go on forever. The client keeps trying to remount the NFS file system from the server until it gets it. Period.

Soft mounts, on the other hand, just generate an I/O error to the calling process when a major timeout occurs. Linux then continues on its merry way.

Typically, important software packages and utilities that are mounted via NFS should be mounted with hard mounts. This is why hard mounts are the default. You don't want your system to start acting strange if the Ethernet gets unplugged for a moment; you want Linux to wait and continue when the network is back up. On the other hand, you might want to mount non-critical data, such as remote news spool partitions, as soft mounts so that if the remote host goes down, it won't hang your current login session.

A typical NFS file system entry in the `/etc/fstab` file might look like this:

```
mailserver:/var/spool/mail /var/spool/mail nfs timeo=20,intr
```

This entry mounts the `/var/spool/mail` file system located on the host `mailserver` at the local mount point `/var/spool/mail`. It specifies that the file system type is `nfs`. Also, it sets the timeout value to 2 seconds (20 tenths of a second) and makes operations on this file system interruptible.

**Mounting NFS File Systems Interactively** NFS file systems can be mounted interactively, just like any other type of file system. However, you should be aware that the `NFS mount` command isn't very pretty due to all the options that you can specify on the command line.

By using the previous example, the interactive `mount` command that you use to mount the `/var/spool/mail` file system becomes

```
# mount -t nfs -o timeo=20,intr mailserver:/var/spool/mail /var/spool/mail
```

If you need to specify datagram sizes and timeouts, interactive `mount` commands can become very complex. It's highly recommended that you place these `mount` commands in your `/etc/fstab` file so that they can be mounted automatically at boot time.

## Maintaining File Systems

As the systems administrator, you're responsible for maintaining the integrity of the file systems themselves. Typically, this means checking the file systems periodically for damaged or corrupted files. Linux automatically checks file systems at boot time if they have a value greater than 0 specified in the pass number field of the `/etc/fstab` file.

**NOTE** The ext2 file system commonly used under Linux has a special flag known as a *clean bit*. If the file system has been synchronized and unmounted cleanly, the clean bit is set on the file system. If the clean bit is set on a file system when Linux boots, it's not checked for integrity. ■

## Using the *fsck* Command

It's a good idea to check your file systems occasionally for damaged or corrupt files. Under the Slackware distribution of Linux, you use the *fsck* (file system check) command to check your file systems. The *fsck* command is really a "front end" for a series of commands that are designed to check specific file systems. The syntax for the *fsck* command is

```
fsck [-A] [-V] [-t fs-type] [-a] [-l] [-r] [-s] filesystems
```

However, the most basic form of the command is

```
fsck filesystems
```

Table 14.7 describes the command-line options for the *fsck* command.

**Table 14.7 Command-Line Arguments for *fsck***

| Argument           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| -A                 | Goes through the <i>/etc/fstab</i> file and tries to check all file systems in one pass. This option is typically used during the Linux boot sequence to check all normally mounted file systems. If you use -A, you can't use the <i>filesystems</i> argument as well. |
| -V                 | Verbose mode. Prints additional information about what <i>fsck</i> is doing.  |
| -t <i>fs-type</i>  | Specifies the type of file system to be checked.  |
| <i>filesystems</i> | Specifies which file system is to be checked. This argument can be a block special device name, such as <i>/dev/hda1</i> , or a mount point, such as <i>/usr</i> .  |
| -a                 | Automatically repairs any problems found in the file system without asking any questions. Use this option with caution.   |
| -l                 | Lists all the file names in the file system.  |
| -r                 | Asks for confirmations before repairing the file system.  |
| -s                 | Lists the superblock before checking the file system.   |

The *fsck* command is actually a front-end program that calls the command to check the file system that matches the type you specify. To do so, Linux needs to know the file system type that it's checking. The easiest way to make sure that *fsck* calls the right command is to specify a file system type with the -t option to *fsck*. If you don't use the -t option, Linux tries to figure out the file system type by looking up the file system in */etc/fstab* and by using the file type specified there. If *fsck* can't find the file type information in */etc/fstab*, it assumes that you're using a Minix file system.

**CAUTION**

The `fsck` command assumes that the file system you're checking is a Minix file system if you don't tell it differently—either with the `-t` argument or by listing the type in `/etc/fstab`. Because your Linux file systems are probably of type `ext2` and not Minix, you should be careful and make sure that `fsck` knows the correct type. This is especially important if you're checking a file system that isn't listed in the `/etc/fstab` file.

It's a good idea to unmount a file system before checking it. This ensures that none of the files on the file system are in use when they're being checked.

**NOTE** Remember, you can't unmount a file system if any of the files on it are busy. For example, if a user is now in a directory on a file system that you try to unmount, you get a message saying that the file system is busy. ■

Trying to check the root file system presents an additional problem. You can't directly unmount the root file system, because Linux must be able to access it in order to run. To check the root file system, you should boot from a maintenance floppy disk that has a root file system on it, and then run `fsck` on your real root file system from the floppy by specifying the special device name of your root file system. If `fsck` makes any changes to your file system, it's important that you reboot your system immediately. This allows Linux to reread important information about your file system and prevents your file system from further corruption.

**CAUTION**

Be sure to reboot your computer immediately after you run `fsck` if any changes were made to your file system, to prevent further corruption to your file system. Use the `shutdown -r` command or the `reboot` command to reboot.

## Creating and Formatting File Systems

When you add a new hard disk to your computer or want to change the partition information on an old hard disk, you go through the steps of creating a file system from a raw disk. Assuming that you've added a new hard disk to your system, you must set the disk partition information and then create the actual file systems on the disk before Linux can use the disk. To change disk partition information, you use the `fdisk` command. After you partition the hard drive, you need to create the file systems by using the `mkfs` command.

### Using `fdisk` to Create Disk Partitions

The `fdisk` command is used to create disk partitions and set the attributes that tell Linux what type of file system is on a particular partition. If you installed Linux from scratch on an

MS-DOS system, you had to run `fdisk` to change the disk partition information before you could install Linux.

### CAUTION

Using `fdisk` on a disk can destroy all data on the disk. Because `fdisk` completely rewrites the file table on the disk, all your former files may be lost. Make sure that you have a complete, current backup of your disks before using `fdisk`.

You should always run the `fdisk` command on an unmounted file system. `fdisk` is an interactive, menu-driven program, not just a single command. To start `fdisk`, type

```
fdisk [drive]
```

*drive* is the physical disk drive that you want to work on. If you don't specify a disk, the disk `/dev/hda` is assumed. For example, to run `fdisk` on the second IDE hard drive in your system, enter

```
fdisk /dev/hdb
```

at the superuser command prompt. Because `fdisk` is a menu-driven program, several different commands are available when you're using `fdisk`, as summarized in Table 14.8.

**Table 14.8** Commands Available from the *fdisk* Menu

| Command | Description                                       |
|---------|---|
| a       | Toggles the bootable flag on a partition          |
| c       | Toggles the DOS compatibility flag on a partition |
| d       | Deletes a partition                               |
| l       | Lists partition types known to <code>fdisk</code> |
| m       | Displays a menu listing all available commands    |
| n       | Adds a new partition                              |
| p       | Prints the partition table for the current disk   |
| q       | Quits without saving any changes                  |
| t       | Changes the file system type for a partition      |
| u       | Changes display/entry units                       |
| v       | Verifies the partition table                      |
| w       | Writes the table to disk and exits                |

*continues*

**Table 14.8 Continued**

| Command | Description   |
|---------|---|
| x       | Lists additional functions for experts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● b Moves the beginning location of data in a partition</li> <li>● c Changes the number of cylinders</li> <li>● d Prints the raw data in the partition table</li> <li>● e Lists extended partitions on disk</li> <li>● h Changes number of heads on disk</li> <li>● r Returns to main menu</li> <li>● s Changes number of sectors on disk</li> </ul> |

`fdisk` can set the file system type of a disk partition to any of several different types. Only use Linux `fdisk` to create partitions used under Linux. For MS-DOS or OS/2 partitions, you should use the `fdisk` tool that's native to that operating environment, and then use Linux's `fdisk` to tag the partitions as Linux native or Linux swap.

Table 14.9 lists the partitions supported by Linux `fdisk`. Each partition type has an associated hexadecimal code that identifies it. You must enter the appropriate code in `fdisk` when you want to set a partition type.

**Table 14.9 Partition Codes and Types in Linux `fdisk`**

| Hex Code | Partition Type                                  |
|----------|---|
| 0        | Empty   |
| 1        | DOS 12-bit FAT                                  |
| 2        | XENIX root                                      |
| 3        | XENIX usr                                       |
| 4        | DOS 16-bit file system, less than 32M           |
| 5        | Extended  |
| 6        | DOS 16-bit file system supporting more than 32M |
| 7        | OS/2 High Performance File System (HPFS)        |
| 8        | AIX   |
| 9        | AIX bootable                                    |
| a        | OS/2 Boot Manager                               |
| 40       | Venix 80286                                     |

| Hex Code | Partition Type                              |
|----------|---|
| 51       | Novell?                                     |
| 52       | Microport                                   |
| 63       | GNU HURD                                    |
| 64       | Novell NetWare                              |
| 65       | Novell NetWare                              |
| 75       | PC/IX                                       |
| 80       | Old MINIX                                   |
| 81       | Linux/MINIX                                 |
| 82       | Linux swap, used for swap files under Linux |
| 83       | Linux native, common Linux file system type |
| 93       | Amoeba                                      |
| 94       | Amoeba BBT                                  |
| a5       | BSD/386                                     |
| b7       | BSDI file system                            |
| b8       | BSDI swap file system                       |
| c7       | Syrinx                                      |
| db       | CP/M  |
| e1       | DOS access                                  |
| e3       | DOS R/O                                     |
| f2       | DOS secondary                               |
| ff       | BBT   |

The following sections show how to use `fdisk`. Here is an example of how to use `fdisk` to set up the partitions on a hard disk for use by Linux. Assume that you want to configure the first IDE drive in your system for Linux. Make sure that you have a backup of your data. All data on your hard disk is destroyed in the process. The name of the first IDE hard disk is `/dev/hda`, which is the default device for Linux.

**Running `fdisk`** You run `fdisk` with

```
# fdisk
```

`fdisk` responds with

```
Using /dev/hda as default device!  
Command (m for help):
```

This tells you that `fdisk` is using disk `/dev/hda` as the device that you're working with. Because this is what you wanted, you're fine. You should always check to make sure that you're

really on the disk that you think that you're on. Linux then displays the `fdisk` command prompt.

**Displaying the Current Partition Table** The first thing you want to do is display the current partition table. This is done with the `p` command:

```
Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/hda: 14 heads, 17 sectors, 1024 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 238 * 512 bytes
```

| Device | Boot | Begin | Start | End | Blocks | Id | System |
|--------|------|-------|-------|-----|--------|----|--------|
|--------|------|-------|-------|-----|--------|----|--------|

```
Command (m for help):
```

This listing shows that the current disk, `/dev/hda`, has a geometry of 14 heads, 17 sectors, and 1,024 cylinders. The display units are in cylinders of 238 \* 512 (121,856) bytes each. Because there are 1,024 cylinders and each cylinder is 121,856 bytes, you can deduce that the disk can hold  $1,024 \times 121,856 = 124,780,544$  bytes, or about 120M. You can also see that `/dev/hda` has no partitions.

**Creating a New Partition** Assume that you want to create a 100M Linux file partition for user home directories and a 20M swap partition. Your next step is to use the `n` command to create a new partition:

```
Command (m for help): n
Command action
e extended
p primary partition (1-4)
p
Partition number (1-4): 1
First cylinder (1-1023): 1
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (1-1023): +100M
```

Using the `n` command to create a new partition displays another menu. You must choose whether you want to create an extended partition or a primary partition. You typically want to create a primary partition unless you have more than four partitions on a disk. `fdisk` then asks you for the partition number that you want to create. Because this is the first partition on the disk, you answer 1. You're then prompted for the first cylinder for the partition. This determines where on the disk the data area starts. Again, because this will be the first partition on the disk, you can start the partition at cylinder 1.

The next line asks you how large you want the partition to be. You have several options as to how to answer this question. `fdisk` accepts either a number, which it interprets as the size in cylinders, or the size in bytes, kilobytes, or megabytes. The size in bytes is specified as `+bytes`, where `bytes` is the size of the partition. Similarly, `+sizeK` and `+sizeM` set the partition size to size kilobytes or size megabytes, respectively. You know that you want a 100M partition, so the easiest answer to the prompt is `+100M`.

**Rechecking the Partition Table** Now you should check the partition table again to see what `fdisk` has done:



```
Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/hda: 14 heads, 17 sectors, 1024 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 238 * 512 bytes
```

| Device    | Boot | Begin | Start | End | Blocks | Id | System      |
|-----------|------|-------|-------|-----|--------|----|-------------|
| /dev/hda1 |      | 1     | 1     | 861 | 102400 | 81 | Linux/MINIX |

```
Command (m for help):
```

The partition table shows that you have 1 partition, /dev/hda1, that goes from cylinder 1 to cylinder 861 and uses 102,400 blocks. It's listed as being type 81, Linux/MINIX.

**Creating the Swap Partition** Now you need to create the 20M swap partition by using the remaining disk space. This is just like creating the first partition:

```
Command (m for help): n
Command action
e   extended
p   primary partition (1-4)
p
Partition number (1-4): 2
First cylinder (862-1023): 862
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (862-1023): 1023
```

**TIP**

It's usually better to go ahead and enter the size of the last partition in cylinders to make sure that you use all the disk space.

Here you specified partition number 2 for the second partition. When `fdisk` prompts for the first cylinder, notice that it gives a range of 862 to 1023. This is because the first partition takes up everything before cylinder 862. So enter **862** as the starting cylinder for the second partition. You want to use all the remaining space on the disk for the swap partition. You should have about 20M left, but if you specify the size in megabytes, the internal `fdisk` calculations could leave you with a couple of unused cylinders. So you enter **1023** for the last cylinder on the size prompt.

**NOTE** You might see an error similar to

```
Warning: Linux cannot currently use the last xxx sectors of this
partition.
```

where `xxx` is some number. Such an error can be ignored. It's left over from the days when Linux couldn't access file systems larger than 64M. □

**Making Sure the Sizes Are Correct** At this point, you've created both partitions that you wanted to create. You should take a look at the partition table one more time to check that the sizes are correct:

```
Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/hda: 14 heads, 17 sectors, 1024 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 238 * 512 bytes
```

| Device    | Boot | Begin | Start | End | Blocks | Id | System      |
|-----------|------|-------|-------|-----|--------|----|-------------|
| /dev/hda1 |      | 1     | 1     | 861 | 102400 | 81 | Linux/MINIX |

Part

III

Ch

14

```

/dev/hda2          862    862    1023    19159    81    Linux/MINIX
Command (m for help):

```

As you can see, /dev/hda1 uses cylinder 1 through cylinder 861 with a size of 102,400 blocks, which is approximately 100M. Partition /dev/hda2 goes from cylinder 862 to cylinder 1023 with a size of 19,156 blocks, or almost 20M.

**Changing the Partition Type** The next thing that you need to do is change the partition type for each partition. To change the partition type, use the `t` command at the `fdisk` command prompt. The most common choice for a standard Linux file system partition is to set it to partition type 83, Linux native. Swap partitions should be set to partition type 82, Linux swap.

```

Command (m for help): t
Partition number (1-4): 1
Hex code (type L to list codes): 83
Command (m for help): t
Partition number (1-4): 2
Hex code (type L to list codes): 82

```

When you use the `t` command, you're prompted for the partition number that you want to change. You're then prompted for the hex code for the file system ID that you want to set the partition to. Typically, Linux file systems are set to type 83 for normal file systems, and type 82 for swap partitions. You can type `l` at this point to see a list of file systems, if you want.

**Finishing Up** Now that you've created the partitions and labeled them, you should take one last look at the partition table before you exit just to make sure that everything is okay.

```

Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/hda: 14 heads, 17 sectors, 1024 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 238 * 512 bytes

```

| Device    | Boot | Begin | Start | End  | Blocks | Id | System       |
|-----------|------|-------|-------|------|--------|----|--------------|
| /dev/hda1 |      | 1     | 1     | 861  | 102400 | 83 | Linux native |
| /dev/hda2 |      | 862   | 862   | 1023 | 19159  | 82 | Linux swap   |

```

Command (m for help):

```

As you can see, the partitions are in the right place, they're the right size, and the file system types are set correctly. The last thing that you need to do is use the `w` command to write the partition table to disk and exit:

```

Command (m for help): w

```

```
#
```

None of the changes that you make during an `fdisk` session take effect until you write them to disk with the `w` command. You can always quit with the `q` command and not save any changes. This said, you should still always have a backup of any disk that you want to modify with `fdisk`.

After you make changes to a disk with `fdisk`, you should reboot the system just to make sure that Linux has the updated partition information in the kernel.

## Using *mkfs* to Build a File System

After you create a file system partition with *fdisk*, you must build a file system on it before you can use it for storing data. This is done with the *mkfs* command. Think of building a parking lot. If you think of *fdisk* as physically building the parking lot, *mkfs* is the part of the process that paints the lines so that the drivers know where to park.

Just like *fsck* is a “front-end” program for checking different types of file systems, *mkfs* actually calls different programs to create the file system, depending on what file system type you want to create. The syntax of the *mkfs* command is

```
mkfs [-V] [-t fs-type] [fs-options] filesystems [blocks]
```

where *filesystems* is the device of the file system that you want to build, such as */dev/hda1*.

### CAUTION

The *mkfs* command also accepts the name of a mount point, such as */home*, as the file system name. You should be extremely careful about using a mount point. If you run *mkfs* on a mounted “live” file system, you might very well corrupt all the data on that file system.

Table 14.10 lists the various command-line parameters that you can specify with *mkfs*.

**Table 14.10 Command-Line Parameters for the *mkfs* Command**

| Option            | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>-v</i>         | Causes <i>mkfs</i> to produce verbose output, including all file system-specific commands that are executed. Specifying this option more than once inhibits execution of any file system-specific commands.   |
| <i>-t fs-type</i> | Specifies the type of file system to be built. If the file system type isn't specified, <i>mkfs</i> tries to figure it out by searching for <i>filesystem</i> in <i>/etc/fstab</i> and using the corresponding entry. If the type can't be deduced, a MINIX file system is created.   |
| <i>fs-options</i> | Specifies file system-specific options that are to be passed to the actual file system-builder program. Although not guaranteed, the following options are supported by most file system builders: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>-c</i> Checks the device for bad blocks before building the file system</li> <li>● <i>-l file-name</i> Reads a list of the bad blocks on the disk from <i>file-name</i></li> <li>● <i>-v</i> Tells the actual file system builder program to produce verbose output</li> </ul> |

*continues*

**Table 14.10 Continued**

| Option            | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>filesystem</i> | Specifies the device on which the file system resides. This parameter is required. |
| <i>blocks</i>     | Specifies the number of blocks to be used for the file system.                     |

Although `-t fs-type` is an optional argument, you should get in the habit of specifying the file system type. Just like `fsck`, `mkfs` tries to figure out the type of the file system from the `/etc/fstab` file. If it can't figure it out, it creates a MINIX file system by default. For a normal Linux file system, you probably want an `ext2` partition instead.

## Using Swap Files and Partitions

Swap space on your Linux system is used for virtual memory. A complete discussion of all the issues involved with virtual memory is beyond the scope of this book. Any good general computer operating system text book discusses the issue in detail.

Linux supports two types of swap space: swap partition and swap files. A *swap partition* is a physical disk partition with its file system ID set to type 82, Linux swap, and is dedicated for use as a swap area. A *swap file* is a large file on a normal file system that's used for swap space.

You're better off using a swap partition instead of a swap file. All access to a swap file is performed through the normal Linux file system. The disk blocks that make up the swap file are probably not contiguous and, therefore, performance isn't as good as it is with a swap partition. I/O to swap partitions is performed directly to the device, and disk blocks on a swap partition are always contiguous. Also, by keeping the swap space off a normal file system, you reduce the risk of corrupting your regular file system if something bizarre happens to your swap file.

## Creating a Swap Partition

To create a swap partition, you must have created a disk partition by using `fdisk` and tagged it as type 82, Linux swap. After you create the swap partition, you have two additional steps to follow to make the swap partition active.

First, you must prepare the partition in a manner similar to creating a file system. Instead of `mkfs`, the command for preparing the partition is `mkswap`. The syntax of the `mkswap` command is

```
mkswap [-c] device size-in-blocks
```

*device* is the name of the swap partition, such as `/dev/hda2`, and *size-in-blocks* is the size of the target file system in blocks. You can get the size in blocks by running `fdisk` and looking at the partition table. In the example earlier in the section "Making Sure the Sizes Are Correct," the size of `/dev/hda2` was 19,159 blocks. Linux requires that swap partitions be between 9 and 65,537 blocks in size. The `-c` argument tells `mkswap` to check the file system for bad blocks when creating the swap space, which is a good idea.

Petitioners Microsoft Corporation and HP Inc. - Ex. 1012, p. 284

Following the example in “Making Sure the Sizes Are Correct,” the command for setting up a swap partition on `/dev/hda2` is

```
mkswap -c /dev/hda2 19159
```

After you run `mkswap` to prepare the partition, you must make it active so that the Linux kernel can use it. The command to make the swap partition active is `swapon`. The syntax for the `swapon` command is

```
swapon filesystem
```

*filesystem* is the file system that you want to make available as swap space. Linux makes a call to `swapon -a` during boot, which mounts all available swap partitions listed in the `/etc/fstab` file.

**NOTE** Remember to put an entry for any swap partitions or swap files that you create into the `/etc/fstab` file so that Linux can automatically access them at boot time. □

## Creating a Swap File

Swap files can be useful if you need to expand your swap space and can't allocate disk space to create a dedicated swap partition. Setting up a swap file is almost identical to creating a swap partition. The main difference is that you have to create the file before you can run `mkswap` and `swapon`.

To create a swap file, you use the `dd` command, which is used for copying large chunks of data. For a full description of this command, see the man page for `dd`. The main things that you have to know before creating the file are the name of the swap file you want to create and its size in blocks. A block under Linux is 1,024 bytes. For example, to create a 10M swap file named `/swap`, enter

```
# dd if=/dev/zero of=/swap bs=1024 count=10240
```

`of=/swap` specifies that the file to be created is named `/swap`, and `count=10240` sets the size of the output file to be 10,240 blocks, or 10M. You then use `mkswap` to prepare the file as a swap space:

```
# mkswap /swap 10240
```

Remember that you have to tell `mkswap` how big the file is. Before you run `swapon`, you need to make sure that the file is completely written to disk by using the `/etc/sync` command.

Now you're ready to make the swap file active. Like with the swap partition, you use the `swapon` command to make the file active; for example,

```
# swapon /swap
```

If you need to get rid of a swap file, you must make sure that it's not active. Use the `swapoff` command to deactivate the swap file, as in

```
# swapoff /swap
```

You can then safely delete the swap file.

## From Here...

In this chapter, you've looked at many different aspects of the Linux file system, from a tour of the basic directory structure to mounting and unmounting file systems. You've explored accessing remote file systems with NFS and looked in detail at how to create file systems and prepare them for use. Finally, this chapter discussed the creation of swap partitions and swap files.

You can find more information about systems administration in the following chapters:

- Chapter 8, "Understanding Systems Administration," introduces you to common systems administration tasks.
- Chapter 10, "Managing User Accounts," describes how to set up and manage user accounts on your Linux system.
- Chapter 11, "Backing Up Data," discusses how to plan and implement plans for data backups.

# Index

## Symbols

---

- + (addition), TI emulation, 190
- [~]allmulti argument, 476
- & (ampersand), 370
- ' (apostrophe), 343
- [~]arp argument, 476
- \* (asterisk) wild card, 339-340
- @ (at) symbol, 531
- ` (backquote), 343
- \ (backslash) character, 127
- < (backspace key), HP emulation, 190
- [~]broadcast [addr] argument, 477
- ? command, 543
- ! command, 541
- \$ command, 541
- # command (mail program), 586
- #config directive, 652
- . (decimal point), TI emulation, 190
- / (division), TI emulation, 190
- \$ (dollar sign), prompt for Bourne and Korn shells, 325
- .. (double dot), directories, 288
- #echo directive, 651-652
- = (equal sign), TI emulation, 190
- #exec directive, 651
- #flastmod directive, 652
- / (forward slash) character, 127
- #fsize directive, 652
- > (greater than), redirecting output, 341
- #include directive, 650-651
- ( (left parenthesis), TI emulation, 190
- < (less than), redirecting input, 341
- \* (multiplication), TI emulation, 190
- +/- (negate; change sign), TI emulation, 190
- % (percent sign), prompt for C shell, 325
- | (pipes), connecting processes with, 341
- [~]pointpoint [addr] argument, 477
- # (pound sign), 120
- ? prompt
  - commands, 579
  - mail program help, 578-579
  - saving e-mail, 580
- ? (question mark) wild card, 340
- " (quotation marks), 343
- " " (quotes), searching, 559
- ) (right parenthesis), TI emulation, 190
- . (single dot), directories, 288
- [] (square brackets) wild card, 340-341
- \$TERMCAP entries (xterm application), 186-187
- ~ (tilde character), 120, 393
  - commands, 575
- [~]trailers argument, 476
- >> (two-character) symbol, appending to files, 342
- 1/x function, 189
- 10^x function, 190
- 3 Button Mouse mini-HOWTO, 690
- 403 Access Forbidden error (Apache), 637
- 500 Server Error (Apache), 637
- 7000fast.s file, 77
- 8 option (rlogin command), 550
- 8-bit fields, 531

## A

---

- A command-line argument (fsck), 275
- a command-line argument (fsck), 275
- a argument
  - dip command, 506
  - nestat program, 483
  - telnet command, 538
- a command (FDISK program), 56, 92
- A flag (ls command), 303
- a flag
  - ls command, 302
  - ps command, 381
  - touch command, 315
- A resource records, 497
- About Fwvm option (Red Hat Start menu), 183

- absolute permissions (chmod command), 295
- accelerated X 1.2 servers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 703
- Access HOWTO, 687
- access.conf file, 634-635, 642
- AccessFileName file, 642
- accessing
  - Linux commands within
    - emacs, 422
    - networks, 41-42
    - URLs, 557
  - Usenet news with Web
    - browsers, 566
  - Web resources, 614
  - WWW (World Wide Web), 557
- account command, 541
- accounts, 118
  - adding
    - Red Hat, 123
    - Slackware, 120-123
  - command, 241-242
  - default, 241
  - group, 242
  - guest, 241
  - passwords, changing, 125-126
  - root, logging in, 119-120
  - SLIP, creating, 512
  - testing, 122
  - unused, 240-241
  - without passwords, 240
- acknowledgments (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 719
- activating CGI scripts (AddType directive), 646
- Active UNIX Domain Sockets fields, 485-486
- adapters (Ethernet)
  - Amateur Radio adapters, 709
  - ARCnet adapters, 709
  - ATM adapters, 710
  - Frame Relay adapters, 710
  - Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 707-710
  - ISDN adapters, 709
  - Load Balancing adapters, 710
  - PCMCIA cards, 709
  - pocket adapters, 708
  - portable adapters, 708
  - slotless adapters, 708
    - supported, 708
  - Token Ring adapters, 709
  - unsupported adapters, 710
- add argument (/sbin/route program), 480
- Add button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager), 124
- Add User dialog box, 124-125
- AddDescription directive, 648
- AddEncoding directive, 644
- AddIcon directive, 647
- AddIconByEncoding directive, 647
- AddIconByType directive, 647
- adding
  - accounts
    - Red Hat, 123
    - Slackware, 120-123
  - groups, 225
  - partitions, 51-52, 58-60, 87-88, 95-97
    - LILO installation, 108-109
  - text to commands, 349
  - text to editing buffer
    - emacs editor, 426
    - vi editor, 403-405
  - users, 222-223
- addition (+) symbol, TI emulation, 190
- AddLanguage directive, 658
- addr argument (route add command), 481
- address argument, 477
- Address mark not found error, 81
- <ADDRESS> tag, 619
- addresses
  - broadcast, 532
  - e-mail, 531
    - aliases, 585
    - forwarding messages, 583-584
    - mail reflectors, 567
    - sending copies of e-mail, 584
  - IP (Internet Protocol), 459-463
    - classes, 460-461, 532
    - dip command, 509-512
    - network naming, 462-463
    - NIC naming tree, 463
    - obtaining, 460-461
    - RFCs (Request for Comments), 461-472
  - loopback, 532
  - URLs, *see* URLs (Uniform Resource Locators)
- AddType directive, 644
  - activating CGI scripts, 646
- adduser command, adding users, 223
- administrators
  - network, *see* network administrators
  - system, *see* systems administrators
- ADSM Backup mini-HOWTO, 690
- Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA), 454
- advansys.s file, 77
- aftype argument, 476
- AgentLog directive, 654
- aha152x.s file, 77
- aha1542.s file, 77
- aha1740.s file, 77
- aha2x4x.s file, 78
- ai option (vi environment setting), 410
- AI-ALife mini-HOWTO, 690
- AIX (IBM), 22
- alert option (/etc/host.conf file configuration), 492
- alias command, 585-586
- Alias directive, configuring Apache, 645-646
- aliases
  - commands, 349
  - defining, 364-365
  - e-mail addresses, 585
- All argument (AllowOverride directive), 643
- all-squash mount option (/etc/exports file), 271
- AllowOverride directive, arguments, 643
- Alt-Fx keys, 123
- Alta Vista
  - search engine, 673
  - Web site, 558, 673
- am53c974.s file, 78
- Amateur Radio adapters, 709
- ampersand (&), 370
- anchors, linking Web pages, 623-624
- AND or + expression, 560
- anongid mount option (/etc/exports file), 272
- anonuid mount option (/etc/exports file), 272



- anonymous FTP, 540**
  - deciphering software, 254
  - sessions, 546-549
  - troubleshooting, 549
- AOLpress Web site, 611**
- ap option (vi environment setting), 410**
- Apache**
  - as-is files, 659-660
  - compiling, 630-631
    - editing Configuration file, 630-631
    - make command, 631
    - running configure script, 631
  - configurable logging, 653-656
  - configuring, 642-650
    - access.conf file, 634-635
    - AddEncoding, 644
    - AddType directive, 644
    - Alias directive, 645-646
    - AllowOverride directive, 643
    - configuration files, 632-635
    - DBM files, 663
    - DirectoryIndex directive, 646-649
    - establishing file hierarchy, 631-632
    - httpd.conf file, 632-634, 665-666
    - MIME types, 643-645
    - per-directory configuration files, 642-643
    - Redirect directive, 645-646
    - ScriptAlias directive, 645-646
    - srm.conf file, 634
    - user directories, 649-650
  - content negotiation, 656-659
  - configuring, 657
    - data format negotiation, 656-658
    - language negotiation, 658-659
  - cookies, 653
  - errors
    - bad user or group name messages, 637
    - customized messages, 664-665
    - initial server startup messages, 637
    - open file error messages, 636
    - port/bind messages, 636-637
  - imagemapping, 652-653
  - NCSA compatibility, 653-654
  - scoreboard files, 669
  - server-side includes, 650-652
    - #include, 650-651
    - #config, 652
    - #echo, 651-652
    - #exec, 651
    - #lastmod, 652
    - #size, 652
    - security, 673
    - starting, 635-636
    - user authentication, 661-662
    - virtual hosts, 663-664
    - Web servers
      - automating logfile rotation, 671-672
      - controlling server child processes, 668-669
      - host-based access control, 660-661
      - increasing performance with .htaccess files, 670
      - increasing performance with as-is files, 671
      - increasing performance with server-side includes, 670
- apostrophe ('), 343**
- append command, 541**
- appledmp printer, 436**
- Application layer (OSI model), 457**
- applications, 28**
  - bc calculator, 134-135
  - chat
    - automating PPP links, 513
    - character/escape sequences, 514-515
    - command-line options, 513
    - creating scripts, 514-515
    - pppd command, 515-517
  - commercial, 32-33
    - Caldera, 33
    - Red Hat, 32
  - compatible with DOSEMU, 148-155
  - defined, 14
  - development
    - GNU General Public License, 729-730
    - tools, 28
  - diplogin, creating SLIP accounts, 512
  - DOSEMU
    - configuring, 140-147
    - installing, 140
    - parameters, 147
    - running, 147-156
  - FDISK
    - adding partitions 51-52, 58-60, 87-88, 95-97
    - commands, 56-57, 92-93
    - deleting partitions, 50-51, 86-87
    - DOS requirements, 48, 84-85
    - formatting partitions, 52-56, 88
    - Linux requirements, 48-49, 85
    - OS/2 requirements, 48-50, 85
    - partition requirements, 48, 84
    - partitioning drive for Linux installation, 47-49, 91-92
    - partitioning hard drives, 84-85
    - repartitioning hard drives, 49-56, 85-88
  - filters, 443
  - gzip, 76
  - ifconfig
    - command-line arguments, 476-477
    - configuring Ethernet interfaces, 478
    - configuring parallel IP interfaces, 479
    - configuring software loopback interfaces, 478
    - initializing Ethernet interfaces, 476-479
    - running with no arguments, 477-478
    - security, 477
  - incompatible with DOSEMU, 155-156
  - installing, terminology, 250
  - LILO, 74
  - mail, 572
    - aliases, 585
    - canceling messages, 573-574
    - customizing environment, 585-587
    - deleting/undeleting e-mail, 580-581
    - environment variables, 586
    - help, 578-579
    - mailing lists, 585
    - printing e-mail, 578
    - quitting, 587-588
    - reading e-mail, 575-577
    - replying to e-mail, 581-583
    - sending command/program results, 575
    - sending copies of e-mail, 584
    - sending e-mail, 572-575
    - writing messages while sending e-mail, 573
  - minicom telecommunications package, 135-136
  - nestat
    - displaying active network connections, 484-487
    - displaying network interface statistics, 487-488

- kernel routing table, 487
  - monitoring TCP/IP networks, 483-488
  - netstat
    - command-line arguments, 483-484
    - running with no command-line arguments, 484-487
  - pkgtool, installing software, 253
  - printing, 439-441
  - processes, *see* processes
  - rawrite, 76
    - creating root disks for Linux installation, 81-83
    - error codes, 81-82
  - rdev, modifying kernel with, 111
  - removing, 256
  - /sbin/route, 479-484
    - command-line arguments, 480
    - deleting routes, 483
    - kernel routing table, 480-483
    - routing examples, 482-483
    - static routes, adding, 481-483
  - sc spreadsheet calculator, 134
  - selection, 110
  - Setup
    - exiting, 114
    - installing Linux, *see* installing, Linux
  - SGID, 243
  - shareware, 184
  - shells, *see* shells
  - SUID, 243
  - SuperProbe, running, 168-169
  - workbone CD player, 133
  - writing shell scripts, 351-355
  - X Windows, 161
    - nxterm, 183
    - Red Hat, 181-185
    - Seyon, 192-194
    - Slackware 96, 185-195
    - xcalc, 188-191
    - xgrab, 194-195
    - xlock, 195
    - xspread, 191-192
    - xterm, 186-188
    - xv, 183-185
  - xbiff, 181
  - xv, commands, 185
  - see also* utilities
  - Applications option (Red Hat Start menu), 182**
  - archie, 562-564**
    - servers, 562-563
  - ARCnet adapters, 709**
  - arguments**
    - addr (route add command), 481
    - AllowOverride directive, 643
    - command-line
      - dip command, 506
      - netstat program, 483-484
      - rcp command, 552
      - rlogin command, 550
      - route add command, 481
      - rsh command, 551
      - /sbin/route program, 480
      - telnet command, 538
    - file command, 290
    - ifconfig program, 476-477
    - mount command, 266
    - pkgtool command, 253
    - time, 218
  - ARPA (Advanced Research Projects Agency), 454**
  - arpa domain, 526**
  - ARPANET, 524**
  - arrow keys**
    - positioning emacs editor cursor, 424
    - positioning vi editor cursor, 400
  - articles (newsgroups), 594**
    - selection-mode commands, 605
  - as-is files (Apache), 659-660**
    - increasing performance of Apache servers, 671-672
  - ascii**
    - command, 541
    - flag, 79
  - askcc variable (mail program), 586**
  - asksub variable (mail program), 586**
  - Assembly mini-HOWTO, 690**
  - asterisk (\*) wild card, 339-340**
  - asynmap map option (pppd command), 515**
  - at (@) symbol, 531**
  - at command, 369**
    - background processing, 346-347
    - running commands at specified times, 371-373
    - troubleshooting, 377
  - At&T Bell laboratories, 21**
  - atime n flag (find command), 314**
  - ATM adapters, 710**
  - Attachment failed to respond error, 82**
  - Attempt to DMA across 64K boundary error, 82**
  - Attempt to write on the write-protected disk error, 82**
  - attributes, HTML, 614**
  - auth option (pppd command), 516**
  - AuthConfig argument (AllowOverride directive), 643**
  - AuthGroupFile directive, 662**
  - AuthName directive, 661**
  - AuthType directive, 662**
  - AuthUserFile directive, 662**
  - automating**
    - LogFile rotation (Apache Web servers), 671-672
    - PPP links, 513-517
      - chat program, 513
      - creating chat scripts, 514-515
      - pppd command, 515-517
    - SLIP operations, dip command, 506-512
  - AX25 HOWTO, 687**
  - aztech.i file, 77**
  - aztech.s file, 78**
- 
- ## B
- b flag (ls command), 303**
  - <B> tag, 618**
  - background processing, 345-346**
    - at command, 346-347
    - batch command, 347
    - cron daemon, 346-348
    - crontab command, 347
    - nohup command, 346
  - backquote (`), 343**
  - backslash (\) character, 127**
  - backspace key (<), HP emulation, 190**
  - Backup with MSDOS mini-HOWTO, 690**
  - backups, 227**
    - considerations, 228
    - kernels, 67
    - performing, 230-234
      - cpio command, 233-234
      - tar utility, 231-233
    - planning a schedule for, 229-230
    - restoring files, 230-234
    - security, 248
    - system, Linux installation, 75-76
    - tips, 228-229
    - upgrading software, 251
  - Bad command error, 81**

**Bad CRC/ECC on disk read error, 82**  
**Bad sector detected error, 82**  
**Bad track detected error, 82**  
**bad user or group name error messages (Apache), 637**  
**bandwidth, defined, 594**  
**bare.i file, 77**  
**bash shell, 213, 326**  
**batch command, 369**  
     background processing, 347  
     running long processes, 373-374  
**batches, 368**  
**baud rate, configuring Linux, 106**  
**BBSs (bulletin board systems), 594**  
**bc calculator, 134-135**  
**bell command, 541**  
**Berkeley broadcast addresses, 532**  
**Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD), 15**  
     Linux history, 21-22  
**best flag, 80**  
**/bin directory, 262**  
     UNIX, 298  
**binaries, 262**  
**binary**  
     command, 541  
     data, representing, 311  
     files, 290, 561  
**bind error messages (Apache), 636-637**  
**BindAddress directive, 665**  
**BIOS (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 699**  
**bit buckets, 293**  
**bj10e printer, 436**  
**bj200 printer, 436**  
**block-special devices, 293**  
**<BLOCKQUOTE> tag, 618**  
**blocks command-line parameter (mkfs command), 284**  
**Boca mini-HOWTO, 690**  
**<BODY> tag, 615**  
**BogoMips mini-HOWTO, 691**  
**Boolean searches, 559**

**boot disks**  
     creating  
         Alpha installation, 69-70  
         Red Hat installation, 46  
         Slackware installation, 76-83  
         MS-DOS, creating for Linux installation, 75  
**boot files, IDE, 77-79**  
**Boot Managers**  
     booting Linux, 216  
     LILO, 216-218  
**Bootdisk HOWTO, 687**  
**booting**  
     DOS, partition requirements, 48, 84-85  
     Linux, 74, 89-91  
         from boot managers, 216  
         from floppies, 216  
         mounting file systems at boot time, 267-269  
         partition requirements, 48-49, 85  
         rebooting, 71, 114  
         troubleshooting, 71-72, 115  
     OS/2, partition requirements, 48-50, 85  
**BootPrompt HOWTO, 687**  
**Bourne Again shell, 213**  
**Bourne shell, 325**  
     variables, 331  
     *see also* sh shell  
**breaches in security, 247-248**  
**Bridge mini-HOWTO, 691**  
**bridges**  
     distributed processing models, 207-208  
     Internet networks, 471-472  
**broadcast addresses, 532**  
**browsers, 557**  
     accessing Usenet news, 566  
     archie, 562-564  
     FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 560-561  
     gopher, 565-566  
     Internet Explorer (Microsoft), 557  
     Navigator (Netscape), 557  
         configuring to work with telnet, 564-565  
         telnet, 564-565  
**BSD (Berkeley Software Distribution), 15**  
     Linux history, 21-22  
**BTW (By the Way), 595**

**buffer**  
     emacs editor, 417  
         adding text to, 426  
         copying text, 430  
         cutting text, 430  
         deleting text, 426-427  
         editing text, 429  
         pasting text, 430  
         replacing contents of, 423  
         replacing text, 428-429  
         retrieving files into, 423  
         saving, 423-430  
     vi editor, 391  
         adding text to, 403-405  
         copying text, 408-410  
         cutting text, 408-410  
         deleting text, 405-406  
         editing text, 406-407  
         pasting text, 408-410  
         repeating commands, 410  
         replacing text, 406-407  
         saving, 399-400  
**bulletin board systems (BBSs), 594**  
**bus topologies, 208-211**  
**buses**  
     installing Red Hat, 37  
     supported by Linux, 699  
**businesses, home businesses, 28**  
**busmouse HOWTO, 687**  
**By the Way (BTW), 595**  
**bye command, 541**

## C

**-c argument**  
     file command, 290  
     nstat program, 483  
**c command (FDISK program), 56, 92**  
**-C flag (ls command), 303**  
**-c flag**  
     ls command, 303  
     ps command, 381  
     touch command, 315  
**c option (tar utility), 231**  
**C shell, 325**  
     *see also* csh shell  
**cache option (named.boot file configuration), 495**

- calculators**
  - bc calculator, 134-135
  - sc spreadsheet, 134
  - xcalc application, 188-191
    - HP emulation, 190-191
    - TI emulation, 189-190
- Caldera, 32-33**
- Caldera Open Linux Lite CD-ROM, 731-732**
- canceling e-mail messages (mail program), 573-574**
- cards**
  - adapter, *see* adapters
  - Ethernet, supported under Linux, 211
  - sound, Hardware Compatability HOWTO, 710-711
- case command, 541**
- case structure, shell programming, 356-357**
- cat command, viewing file contents, 310**
- cd [directory] command, 544**
- cd command, 541**
  - moving around directories, 127
- CD players, workbone, 133**
- CD Writer mini-HOWTO, 691**
- CD-ROMs**
  - Caldera Open Linux Lite, 731-732
    - distribution, 733-734
    - installing, 732-733
  - drives, Hardware Compatability HOWTO, 712-713
  - installing Red Hat, 40-41, 44
  - installing Slackware, 101-102
  - types, 101-102
- cdeskjet printer, 436**
- cdj500 printer, 436**
- cdj550 printer, 436**
- cdjcolor printer, 436**
- cdjmono printer, 436**
- CDROM HOWTO, 687**
- cdu31a.i file, 77**
- cdu31a.s file, 78**
- cdu535.i file, 77**
- cdu535.s file, 78**
- cdup command, 541, 544**
- CE/C function, 189**
- centralized processing systems, 204-206**
  - front-end processors, 205
- calculators**
  - servers, 205
  - terminals, 205
- CGI scripts**
  - activating, AddType directive, 646
  - creating server-pushes with, 659
  - security, 672-673
- CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol), 518**
- characters**
  - file-name matching, 338-341
  - sequences (chat program), 514-515
- chat program**
  - automating PPP links, 513
  - character/escape sequences, 514-515
  - command-line options, 513
  - creating chat scripts, 514-515
  - pppd command, 515-517
- chatkey keyword command, 507**
- chfn command, 223**
- children processes, 635**
  - Apache Web servers
    - controlling, 668-669
    - scoreboard files, 669
- chipsets, supported by XFree86, 165-166**
- chmod command, 243, 541**
  - absolute octal permissions, 295
  - changing file permissions, 294
  - relative permissions, 296
- class field, 497**
- classes, IP addresses, 460-461, 532**
  - obtaining, 460-461
  - obtaining RFCs (Requests For Comments), 461-472
- clear command**
  - emacs screen, 424
  - clearing screen, 130
- client/server systems, 209-210**
  - WWW (World Wide Web), 556-560
  - X Windows, 161-162
- clients, 556**
- close command, 541**
- cm206.i file, 77**
- cm206.s file, 78**
- CNAME resource records, 497**
- codes, partition (fdisk), 278-279**
- color, ls command, 304-305**
- color.gz file, 80**
- Colour Is mini-HOWTO, 691**
- com domain, 526**
- combining lists, 622-623**
- command accounts, 241-242**
- COMMAND field (ps command), 380**
- command mode (vi editor), 393**
- command-line arguments**
  - dip command, 506
  - ifconfig program, 476-477
  - netstat program, 483-484
  - rcp command, 552
  - rlogin command, 550
  - route add command, 481
  - rsh command, 551
  - /sbin/route program, 480
  - telnet command, 538
- command-line parameters**
  - assigning values to variables, 354
  - mkfs command, 283-284
- commands**
  - ? prompt, 579
  - ~ (tilde character), 575
  - accessing within emacs, 422
  - adding text to, 349
  - adduser, adding users, 223
  - alias, 585
  - aliasing, 349
  - at
    - background processing, 346-347
    - running commands at specified times, 371-373
    - troubleshooting, 377
  - batch
    - background processing, 347
    - running long processes, 373-374
  - building new kernels, 113
  - cat, viewing file contents, 310
  - cd, moving around directories, 127
  - cd [directory], 544
  - cdup, 544
  - chatkey keyword, 507
  - chfn, 223
  - chmod, 243
    - absolute octal permissions, 295
    - changing file permissions, 294
    - relative permissions, 296
  - clear, clearing screen, 130
  - completing, 119, 349
  - compress, 254
  - config, 507

- cp, 349
  - copying files, 128-129, 306-307
- cpio, backups, 233-234
- cron, scheduling commands, 374-377
- crontab
  - background processing, 347
  - scheduling commands, 374-377
  - time-field options, 376
  - troubleshooting, 377
- databits bits, 507
- default, 507
- defining aliases, 364-365
- dial num, 507
- dip
  - automating SLIP operations, 506-512
  - command mode, 506-509
  - command-line arguments, 506
  - dynamic IP addresses, 511-512
  - static IP addresses, 509-510
  - variables, 509
- dir, 544
- echo, 326, 343, 351-352
- echo on | off, 507
- elm (elm mailer), 589-591
- emacs editor, 431-433
  - deleting text, 427
  - editing text, 429
  - replacing text, 427
  - searching, 427
  - undoing, 422
- entering, 118
- FDISK, 56-57, 92-93
- fdisk menu, 277-278
- feedback, 348
- file, 289-290
- find
  - finding files, 313-315
  - flags, 314
- flush, 507
- fsck (file system check), 275-276
- ftp commands, 541-545
  - changing directories, 544
  - changing file transfer mode, 545
  - checking transfer status, 545-553
  - ending FTP sessions, 544
  - local commands, 545
  - remote directory listing, 544
  - retrieving files from remote systems, 544
  - sending files to remote systems, 545
  - starting FTP sessions, 543
- get, 544
- get \$var, 507
- goto label, 507
- groups, 344-345
- gzip
  - compressing files, 315
  - flags, 79-80
- gzip -d, 254
- halt, 219
- help, 507
  - man, 126
- history, 118
- if \$var op, 507
- init initstring, 508
- ispell, 371
- kill, terminating processes, 385-388
- lcd, 544
- less
  - displaying file content, 130
  - viewing file contents, 310
- lf, 337
- login username, 123
- logout, 120, 123
- lpc, 440-441
- lpq, 440
- lpr, 440
- lprm, 440
- ls, 349, 544
  - color output, 304-305
  - displaying directory information, 127
  - displaying files, 302-305
  - flags, 302-304
- ls -l, 292-293
  - displaying permissions field, 243
- m- commands, 130-131
- mail program, customizing mail environment, 586-587
- make, compiling Apache, 67, 631
- man, 369
- mget, 544
- minicom telecommunications package, 135-136
- mkdir, 163, 306
  - creating new directories, 128
- mkfs, building file systems, 283-284
- mode SLIP| CSLIP, 508
- modem HAYES, 508
- more
  - displaying file content, 129-130
  - viewing file contents, 310
- mount
  - arguments, 266
  - mounting file systems, 266-267
- mput, 545
- multitasking, 369
- multiuser, 369
- mv
  - moving files, 129, 307
  - renaming files, 307
- netmask mask, 508
- nice, scheduling command priority, 384
- nohup
  - background processing, 346
  - controlling background processes, 383-384
- now, troubleshooting, 377
- od
  - displaying file content in octal notation, 311
  - flags, 312
  - pre-POSIX format specifications, 312
- Options menu (Netscape Navigator), Preferences, 564
- parity E| O| N, 508
- password, 508
- patch, 112
- pgm1, 306
- pkgtool, arguments, 253
- port dev, 508
- pppd, 515-517
- print, 508
- ps, 245, 635
  - flags, 381
  - output (Listing 20.1), 421
  - output headings, 380
  - reporting on status of processes, 379-383
- put, 545
- quit, 508
- R, 582
- r, 582
- r- commands, 549-552
  - rcp, 552
  - rlogin, 550
  - rsh, 551
- rcp, command-line arguments, 552
- read, assigning values to variables, 353
- reboot, 219
- renice, scheduling command priority, 384-385
- repeating, while loop, 361-362
- reset, 508
- rlogin, command-line options, 550
- rm
  - deleting files, 129
  - removing files, 307-309
- rmdir, deleting directories, 128
- route, deleting routes, 483
- route add, command-line arguments, 481

- rsh, command-line options, 551
- scheduling, 371-377
  - at command, 371-373
  - batch command, 373-374
  - cron command, 374-377
  - crontab command, 374-377
- search, emacs editor, 428
- selection mode for newsgroup articles, 605
- send text, 508
- set, setting environment options for vi editor, 411-412
- set search, 563
- shell command parsing, 336-345
  - flags, 337
  - parameters, 338
- shell scripts, 350-362
  - comments, 352
  - creating, 350-351
  - echo command, 351-352
  - special characters, 355
  - variables, 352-355
  - writing programs, 351-355
- show search, 563
- shutdown
  - flags, 218-219
  - shutting down Linux, 131-132
  - syntax, 218
- sleep num, 508
- speed num, 508
- stopbits bits, 508
- sty, 329
- su, 244-245
- su username, 123
- substituting, 343-344
- tar utility, 231-233
- telnet
  - command-line arguments, 538
  - remote logins, 538-539
  - sessions, 539
  - syntax, 538
- term, 508
- terminating, 344
- test, shell programming, 358-360
- Tetris, 137
- timeout num, 508
- touch, flags, 315
- Trek, 138-139
- tty, 292
- umount, unmounting file systems, 269-270
- uncompress, 254
- vi, 393
- vi editor
  - adding text to buffer, 404-405
  - deleting text, 405
  - editing text, 406
  - repeating, 410
  - replacing text, 406
  - searching, 408
  - undo, 398
  - undoing, 398-399
  - :w (write), 399
  - write, 399
  - viewing history, 348
  - wait word num, 508
  - who
    - finding login names, 378-379
    - output formats, 378-379
  - workbone CD player, 133
  - xv application, 185
  - zcat, 316
- COMMENT field (who command), 379**
- comments, writing shell scripts, 352**
- Commercial HOWTO, 687**
- commercial programs, 32-33**
- commercial X servers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 703-704**
  - accelerated X 1.2, 703
  - Metro X 2.3.2, 703-704
- communications**
  - Linux, 19-20
  - system administrators, 213
  - UNIX, 19-20
- comp newsgroups, 597**
- comp.os.linux.misc newsgroup, 678**
- compiling Apache, 630-631**
  - editing Configuration file, 630-631
  - make command, 631
  - running configure script, 631
- completing commands, 119, 349**
- Components to Install dialog box, 61**
- compress command, 254**
- compressing files, 315-316**
- computers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 699**
- config command, 507**
- configurable logging (Apache), 653-656**
- configuration files**
  - Apache, 632-635
    - access.conf file, 634-635
    - editing, 630-631
    - httpd.conf file, 632-634
    - srm.conf file, 634
  - TCP/IP networks, 474-475
    - /etc/hosts file, 474-475
    - /etc/networks file, 475
- configure script, running for Apache compilation, 631**
- Configure TCP/IP dialog box, 65**
- Configure Timezones dialog box, 65**
- configuring**
  - Apache, 642-650
    - access.conf file, 634-635
    - AddEncoding, 644
    - AddType directive, 644
    - Alias directive, 645-646
    - AllowOverride directive, 643
    - configuration files, 632-635
    - DBM files, 663
    - DirectoryIndex directive, 646-649
    - establishing file hierarchy, 631-632
    - httpd.conf file, 632-634
    - httpd.conf settings, 665-666
    - MIME types, 643-645
    - per-directory configuration files, 642-643
    - Redirect directive, 645-646
    - ScriptAlias directive, 645-646
    - srm.conf file, 634
    - user directories, 649-650
  - content negotiation, 657
  - defined, 250
  - DNS (Domain Name Service), 489-490
  - DOSEMU, 140-147
  - Ethernet interfaces, ifconfig program, 478
  - kernels, 67-68
  - LILO, 217
  - Linux, 63-64, 104-106
    - baud rate, 106
    - ftape, 106
    - modem, 105-106
    - mouse, 106
  - login environment, 327-335
    - setting shell environment, 330-332
    - shell variables, 332-335
    - terminal, 327
  - Netscape Navigator to work with telnet, 564-565
  - networks, 64-66
    - guidelines, 470-471
    - keyboard settings, 65
    - root password, 65-66
    - selecting for Internet networks, 469-470

- TCP/IP, 65
  - time, 65
  - parallel IP interfaces, ifconfig program, 479
  - printers, 438
    - /dev/lp0 printer, 446-448
    - Red Hat, 448-449
    - troubleshooting, 447
  - resolver (DNS), 491-494
    - /etc/host.conf file, 491-492
    - /etc/resolv.conf file, 493-494
  - sendmail, 110-111
  - software loopback interfaces, ifconfig program, 478
  - XFree86, 167-175
    - running X in probe only mode, 175-176
    - running SuperProbe, 168-169
    - running XF86Config file, 174-175
    - XF86Config file, 169-174
  - connect program (pppd command), 516
  - connections
    - Internet networks, 467-469
    - processes with pipes (|), 341
  - connectivity (Internet), 525
    - TCP/IP networks, displaying active connections, 484-487
  - Consoles mini-HOWTO, 691
  - Consultants HOWTO, 687
  - content negotiation (Apache), 656-659
    - configuring, 657
    - data format negotiation, 656-658
    - language negotiation, 658-659
  - control keys, 329
  - Control Panel (Red Hat), managing users, 124-125
  - control structures, shell programming, 355-362
    - case structure, 356-357
    - finding exit status, 357
    - if structures, 358
    - iterative structures, 360-362
    - test command, 358-360
  - Controller has failed error, 82
  - controllers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 704-706
    - I/O, 706-707
    - intelligent I/O, 707
    - SCSI, 704-706
    - unintelligent I/O, 706-707
    - unsupported SCSI controllers, 706
  - conventions, UNIX, 214
  - cooked mode, device driver, 328
  - cookies (Apache), 653
  - cooperative multitasking, 16
  - Copy File dialog box, 319
  - copying
    - files, 306-307
      - cp command, 128-129
      - XFree86 GUI, 319
    - text
      - emacs editor, 430
      - vi editor, 408-410
  - copyrights, HOWTOs, 696
  - cos function, 189
  - cp command, 349
    - copying files, 128-129, 306-307
  - cpio command, backups, 233-234
  - CPUs (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 700
  - cr command, 541
  - crackers, 29, 238
    - controlling, 246
  - crashes, routers, 466
  - CRC/ECC corrected data error, 82
  - cron command, 369
    - scheduling commands, 374-377
  - cron daemon, background processing, 346-348
  - crontab command, 369
    - background processing, 347
    - scheduling commands, 374-377
    - time-field options, 376
    - troubleshooting, 377
  - crtsets option (pppd command), 516
  - csh shell, 326
    - see also C shell
  - cursor
    - emacs editor
      - positioning with arrow keys, 424
      - positioning with big-movement keys, 425
    - vi editor, positioning, 401-402
  - customizing
    - e-mail environment, 585-587
    - emacs, 433
    - shells, 362-364
      - defining command aliases, 364-365
  - exporting variables to new shells, 362-364
  - vi sessions, 412-413
  - cutting text
    - emacs editor, 430
    - vi editor, 408-410
  - Cyrillic HOWTO, 687
- 
- ## D
- 
- d argument (telnet command), 538
  - d command (FDISK program), 56, 93
  - DEC Alphas, installing Red Hat, 68-71
    - creating boot disks, 69-70
    - creating root disks, 69-70
  - d filename flag (ls command), 303
  - d option
    - rlogin, 550
    - rsh command, 551
  - daemons, 368
    - cron, background processing, 346-348
    - defined, 293
    - spamming, 668
  - Danish HOWTO, 687
  - DARPA (U.S. Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency), 524
  - data acquisition (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 718
  - data fields, 497
  - Data Link layer (OSI model), 457
  - database files, setting up name servers, 496-498
  - Database Management File, see DBM files
  - databits bits command, 507
  - datagram, 454
  - date stamps, 315
  - DBM files, configuring Apache, 663
  - Deactivate button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager), 124
  - debug command, 541
  - decimal notation, 311
  - decimal point (.),
    - TI emulation, 190

- declj250 printer, 436
- decompress flag, 80
- default command, 507
- DefaultIcon directive, 647
- defaultroute option (pppd command), 516
- defaults
  - accounts, 241
  - bash shell, *see* bash shell
- definition lists, 620-621
- del argument (/sbin/route program), 480
- Delay option, LILO, 108
- delete command, 541
- Delete command (xv application), 185
- deleting
  - directories, rmdir command, 128
  - e-mail, mail program, 580-581
  - files
    - asterisk (\*) wild card, 340
    - rm command, 129
  - groups, 225
  - partitions, 50-51, 86-87
  - routes, 483
  - text
    - emacs editor, 426-427
    - vi editor, 405-406

*see also* removing
- deskjet printers, 436
- desktops, virtual, 180-181
- dev device argument (route add command), 481
- /dev directory, 263
- device files, 263
- device option (pppd command), 515
- devices
  - block-special, 293
  - character-special, 293
  - /dev directory, 263
  - drivers
    - configuring terminal environment, 327-330
    - cooked mode, 328
    - raw mode, 328
  - FIFO (first-in-first-out buffer), 293
  - files, 292-293
  - independence, 19
  - Linux, 92
  - tty devices, names, 292
- dfaxhigh printer, 436
- dfaxlow printer, 436
- dial num command, 507
- Diald mini-HOWTO, 691
- dialing directory (Seyon application), 193
- dialog boxes
  - Add User, 124-125
  - Components to Install, 61
  - Configure TCP/IP, 65
  - Configure Timezones, 65
  - Copy File, 319
  - File-Information, 318
  - Grab (xv application), 185
  - Load Module, 64
  - Moving & Renaming Files, 319
  - Remove File, 319
  - RHS Add/Edit User, 126
  - Root Password, 65
- diamond video cards (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 701
- dip command
  - automating SLIP operations, 506-512
    - command mode of dip command, 506-509
  - dynamic IP addresses, 511-512
    - static IP addresses, 509-510
  - command-line arguments, 506
  - variables, 509
- Dip+SLiRP+CSLiP mini-HOWTO, 691
- diplogin program, creating SLIP accounts, 512
- dir command, 541, 544
- direct assignments, assigning values to variables, 353
- directives (Apache)
  - #config, 652
  - #echo, 651-652
  - #exec, 651
  - #lastmod, 652
  - #fsize, 652
  - #include, 650-651
  - AddDescription, 648
  - AddEncoding, 644
  - AddIcon, 647
  - AddIconByEncoding, 647
  - AddIconByType, 647
  - AddLanguage, 658
  - AddType, 644
    - activating CGI scripts, 646
  - AgentLog, 654
  - Alias, 645-646
  - AllowOverride, 643
  - AuthGroupFile, 662
  - AuthName, 661
  - AuthType, 662
  - AuthUserFile, 662
  - BindAddress, 665
  - DefaultIcon, 647
  - DirectoryIndex, configuring Apache, 646-649
  - ErrorDocument, 664-665
  - LanguagePriority, 658
  - LogFormat, 654-656
    - variables, 654-655
  - PidFile, 665
  - Redirect, 645-646
  - RefererLog, 654
  - ScriptAlias, 645-646
  - Timeout, 666
- directories, 262-265
  - . (single dot), 288
  - .. (double dot), 288
  - /bin directory, 262
  - changing during FTP sessions, 544
  - creating, mkdir command, 128
  - deleting, rmdir command, 128
  - /dev directory, 263
  - displaying information
    - about, 127
  - /etc directory, 262
  - files, 291-292
  - home directories, 118, 226, 264
  - /lib directory, 263
  - Linux, 298-299
  - moving around, cd command, 127
  - printing, 441-442
  - /proc directory, 264
  - removing, 307-309
  - /sbin directory, 262
  - /tmp directory, 264
  - UNIX, 297-298
  - user directories, 649-650
  - /usr directory, 264
    - subdirectories, 264-265
  - /var directory, 264
- directory option (named.boot file configuration), 494
- DirectoryIndex directive, configuring Apache, 646-649
- disconnect command, 541
- disconnect program (pppd command), 516
- Disk changed since last operation error, 82
- disk partitions, creating, 276-282
- Diskless mini-HOWTO, 691



- displaying**
  - directory information, 127
  - file content
    - less command, 130
    - more command, 129-130
    - in octal notation, od command, 311
  - files, 302-305
    - XFree86 GUI, 318
  - network connections (netstat program), 484-487
  - network interface statistics (netstat program), 487-488
  - unordered lists, 619
- distributed processing systems, 206-209**
  - bridges, 207-208
  - gateways, 207
  - hubs, 207-208
  - NICs (network interface cards), 207-208
  - repeaters, 207-208
  - routers, 207-208
  - topologies, 207-209
  - workstations, 207
- distribution files (XFree86), 164-165**
- Distribution HOWTO, 687**
- distributions, 26-27**
  - Caldera Open Linux Lite CD-ROM, 733-734
  - Red Hat, *see* Red Hat
  - Slackware, *see* Slackware
- division (/), TI emulation, 190**
- djet500 printer, 436**
- djet500c printer, 437**
- <DL> tag, 621, 623**
- DMA overrun error, 82**
- DNS (Domain Name Service), 454**
  - configuring, 489-490
  - domain name space, 490, 533
  - Internet names, 525
  - name servers, 491, 533
    - database files, 496-498
    - named.boot file, 494-496
    - named.ca file, 502
    - named.hosts file, 499-501
    - named.rev file, 501
    - resource records, 496-498
    - setup, 494-502
  - resolvers, 491, 533
    - configuring, 491-494
    - /etc/host.conf file, 491-492
    - /etc/resolv.conf file, 493-494
    - terminology, 490-491
    - troubleshooting, 502-503
- DNS HOWTO, 687**
- document root (Apache), 631**
- document tags (HTML), 614-615**
- Document Type Definition (DTD) file, 610**
- documentation, 32**
  - LDP (Linux Documentation Project), 677
  - online, 680-681
    - HOWTO documents, 680
    - man pages, 681
- documents, HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), *see* Web pages**
- dollar sign (\$), prompt for Bourne and Korn shells, 325**
- Domain Name Service, *see* DNS**
- domain name space, 490, 533**
- domain option (/etc/resolv.conf file configuration), 493**
- domains, 490, 526-530**
  - finding information about, 533-535
    - nslookup utility, 535
    - whois utility, 533-534
  - international, 526-530
  - names, 490
  - subdomains, 531
  - U.S., 526
- DontZap flag, 170**
- DontZoom flag, 170**
- DOOM, 196-197**
- DOS (Disk Operating System)**
  - booting, partition requirements, 48, 84-85
  - files, m-commands, 130-131
  - running applications under Linux
    - DOSEMU, configuring, 140-147
    - DOSEMU, installing, 140
    - DOSEMU, running, 147-156
- DOS2Linux mini-HOWTO, 691**
- DOSEMU**
  - applications compatible with, 148-155
  - applications incompatible with, 158
  - configuring, 140-147
  - HOWTO, 687
  - installing, 140
  - parameters, 147
  - running, 147-156
- dosemu.conf file, 140-147**
- double dot (..) directories, 288**
- down argument, 476**
- DRG function, 189**
- Drive not ready error, 82**
- Drive parameter activity failed error, 82**
- drivers, PCMCIA, 700**
- drives**
  - partitioning, 83-89
    - FDISK, 47-49, 84-85
    - Linux installation (FDISK), 91-92
    - partitions, 47, 83-84
    - Red Hat installation, 44
  - repartitioning, 31
    - adding partitions, 51-52, 87-88
    - alternatives, 50, 86
    - backing up system, 75-76
    - boot disk creation, 76-83
    - deleting partitions, 50-51, 86-87
    - FDISK, 49-56, 85-88
    - formatting partitions, 52-56, 88
    - MS-DOS boot disk creation, 75
    - root disk creation, 76-83
- drives (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO)**
  - CD-ROM, 712-713
  - hard, 711-712
  - removable, 713-714
  - tape, 42-46, 712
- dstaddr addr argument, 477**
- <DT> tag, 621**
- dtc3280.s file, 78**
- DTD (Document Type Definition) file, 610**
- dumb terminals, 205**
- Dump Frequency field (/etc/fstab file), 268**
- Dungeon, 137-138**
- dust, effect on system, 238**
- dynamic IP addresses, dip command, 511-512**
- Dynamic IP Hacks mini-HOWTO, 691**

**E**

-e escape\_char argument, telnet command, 538

-e flag (ps command), 381

e function, 189

-E option (rlogin command), 550

-e option

crontab command, 376  
rlogin command, 550

e-mail, 570-572

addresses, 531  
aliases, 585  
forwarding messages, 583-584  
mail reflectors, 567  
sending copies of e-mail, 584

advantages, 570

deleting (mail program), 580-581

elm mailer, 588-591  
elm command, 589-591  
starting, 588-589

forwarding, 583-584

mail program, 572  
aliases, 585  
canceling messages, 573-574  
customizing environment, 585-587

deleting e-mail, 580-581  
mailing lists, 585  
printing e-mail, 578  
quitting, 587-588

reading e-mail, 575-577  
replying to e-mail, 581-583  
saving prepared messages, 574-575

sending command/program results, 575  
sending copies of e-mail, 584  
sending e-mail, 572-575  
sending e-mail to files, 579-580

undeleting e-mail, 580-581  
writing messages while sending e-mail, 573

POP (Post Office Protocol) mail, 570

printing, 578

reading  
from other files, 577-578  
mail program, 575-577  
while sending mail, 578

receiving, 570

replying to (mail program), 581-583

saving, 580

sending, 570-571

copies, 584  
mail program, 572-575  
to files with mail program, 579-580  
while reading e-mail, 578-583

undeleting (mail program), 580-581  
writing, while sending e-mail, 573

e<sup>^</sup>x function, 191

eata\_dma.s file, 78

eata\_isa.s file, 78

eata\_pio.s file, 78

eb option (vi environment setting), 411

echo command, 326, 343, 351-352

echo on|off command, 507

Edit button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager), 124

editing

commands, 348  
Configuration file for Apache compilation, 630-631  
emacs files, troubleshooting, 419  
/etc/passwd file, 327  
password file, 327  
text

emacs editor, 429  
vi editor, 391-393, 406-407

editors

emacs, 415  
accessing Linux commands, 422  
commands, 431-433  
creating emacs files, 418-419  
customizing, 433  
exiting, 420-422  
help, 416  
replacing current buffer, 423  
retrieving files into buffer, 423  
saving buffer, 423-430  
screen, 417  
searching, 427-429  
starting, 416-417  
starting by using existing file, 419-420  
suspending emacs, 421  
switching between emacs, 421  
troubleshooting, 419, 428  
undoing commands, 422  
writing files, 423-430

HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 610-613

sending e-mail prepared by, 574-575

vi, 389-393

command mode, 393  
creating vi files, 394-395  
defined, 390-391  
editing process, 391-393  
exiting, 396-397  
input mode, 394, 403  
repeating commands, 410  
saving buffer, 399-400  
saving files, 399  
searching, 407-408  
setting environment options, 410-413  
starting, 393  
starting by using existing file, 395-396  
troubleshooting, 392-396, 408  
undoing commands, 398-399  
writing files, 399-400

edu domain, 526

EISA function, 189

EISA (Extended ISA) bus, 699

electricity, effect on system, 238

Electronic Mail HOWTO, 689

electronic mail, *see* e-mail

ELF HOWTO, 687

elm command (elm mailer), 589-591

elm mailer, 588-591  
elm command, 589-591  
starting, 588-589

<EM> tag, 618-619

emacs editor, 415

accessing Linux commands, 422  
adding text to buffer, 426  
commands, 431-433  
copying text, 430  
creating emacs files, 418-419  
customizing, 433  
cutting text, 430  
deleting text, 426-427  
editing text, 429  
exiting, 420-422  
help, 416  
pasting text, 430  
positioning cursor  
arrow keys, 424  
big-movement keys, 425  
replacing current buffer, 423  
replacing text, 428-429  
retrieving files into buffer, 423  
saving buffer, 423-430  
screen, 417  
clearing, 424  
searching, 427-429

- starting, 416-417
  - from existing file, 419-420
- suspending emacs, 421
- switching between emacs, 421
- troubleshooting, 419
  - editing files, 419
  - file names, 419
  - opening files, 420
  - searching, 428
  - tutorial, starting, 417
  - undoing commands, 422
  - writing files, 423-430
- Emacspeak HOWTO**, 687
- emoticons, 600
- encrypted\_password field**, 222
- End-of-file key**, 329
- End-of-line key**, 329
- ending FTP sessions**, 544
- entering commands**, 118
- environments**
  - login, configuring, 327-335
  - shell, 327
    - setting, 330-332
    - variables, 332-335
  - terminal, 327
  - variables
    - mail program, 586
    - PRINTER, setting, 445
  - vi editor options
    - customizing vi sessions, 412-413
    - set command, 411-412
    - setting, 410-413
    - showmode option, 412
    - toggle options, 412
- eps9high printer**, 437
- epson printer**, 437
- epsonc printer**, 437
- equal sign (=), II emulation**, 190
- Erase key**, 329
- ErrorDocument directive**, 664-665
- errors**
  - Apache
    - bad user or group name messages, 637
    - customized messages, 664-665
    - initial server startup messages, 637
    - open file error messages, 636
    - port/bind messages, 636-637
  - rawrite, 81-82
  - troubleshooting printing, 447

- escape c1,c2,... option (pppd command), 516
- escape sequences (chat program), 514-515
- escp2 printer**, 437
  - /etc/exports file, NFS (Network File System), 271-272
  - /etc/fstab file, mounting NFS file systems, 273
  - /etc directory, 262
    - UNIX, 297
  - /etc/diphosts file, SLIP, 512
  - /etc/fstab file, 267
    - fields, 267-268
    - replacing, 111-115
  - /etc/host.conf file, configuring resolver (DNS), 491-492
  - /etc/resolv.conf file, configuring resolver (DNS), 493-494
  - /etc/hosts file, TCP/IP network, 474-475
  - /etc/networks file, TCP/IP network, 475
  - /etc/passwd file
    - editing, 327
    - fields, 222
  - /etc/printcap file, 442-445
    - fields, 443-445
- Ethernet**
  - adapters
    - Amateur Radio, 709
    - ARCnet, 709
    - ATM adapters, 710
    - Frame Relay adapters, 710
    - Hardware Compatability HOWTO, 707-710
    - ISDN, 709
    - Load Balancing adapters, 710
    - PCMCIA cards, 709
    - pocket, 708
    - portable, 708
    - slotless, 708
    - supported, 211, 708
    - Token Ring, 709
    - unsupported adapters, 710
  - HOWTO, 687
  - interfaces
    - configuring with ifconfig, 478
    - initializing, 476-479
    - inspecting with ifconfig running, 477-478
    - network access, 41-42
    - see also networks
- etiquette**, see *netiquette*

- European Linux Web site**, 682
- EXC function**, 190
- Excite Web site**, 559
- exec cmd flag (find command)**, 314
- exec processes**, 336
- executable files**, 290
- Exit button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager)**, 124
- exit command**, 541
- Exit Fvwm option (Red Hat Start menu)**, 183
- exiting**
  - emacs editor, 420-422
    - Linux, 71, 114
    - Setup program, 114
    - vi editor, 396-397
- exporting**
  - NFS (Network File System), 270-271
    - variables to new shells, 362-364
- Extended ISA (EISA) bus**, 699
- extensions, binary files**, 561

---

## F

- f filename option (chat program)**, 513
- F flag**, 337
  - ls command, 303
- f flag (ps command)**, 381
- f name option (tar utility)**, 231
- f namefile argument (file command)**, 290
- FancyIndexing option (IndexOptions)**, 649
- FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions)**, 595
- fast flag**, 80
- fault tolerance, networks**, 468
- fdisk program**
  - adding partitions, 51-52, 58-60, 87-88, 95-97
  - commands, 56-57, 92-93
  - creating disk partitions, 276-282
    - changing types, 282
    - commands, 277-278
    - current partition tables, 280
    - new partitions, 280
    - partition codes, 278-279
    - rechecking table sizes, 281-282

- rechecking tables, 280-281
- running, 279
- swap partitions, 281
- syntax, 277
- deleting partitions, 50-51, 86-87
- formatting partitions, 52-56, 88
- partitioning hard drives, 47-49, 84-85
  - DOS requirements, 48, 84-85
  - Linux installation, 48-49, 91-92
  - Linux requirements, 85
  - OS/2 requirements, 48-50, 85
  - partition requirements, 48, 84
- repartitioning hard drives, 49-56, 85-88
- fdomain.s file, 78**
- feedback, commands, 348**
- fields**
  - /etc/passwd file, 222
  - /etc/fstab file, 267-268
  - /etc/printcap file, 443-445
  - Active UNIX Domain Sockets, 485-486
  - Internet connections, 484-485
  - kernel routing table
    - (/sbin/route program), 480
  - Red Hat printers, 449
  - resource records, 496-497
- FIFO (first-in-first-out buffer) device, 293**
- file command, 289-290**
- file filename option (pppd command), 516**
- file hierarchy (Apache), 631-632**
- File Limit field (Red Hat printers), 449**
- File system specifier field (/etc/fstab file), 267**
- file systems, 262-265**
  - /bin directory, 262
  - creating, 276-284
    - fdisk (disk partitions), 276-282
    - mkfs command, 283-284
  - /dev directory, 263
  - /etc directory, 262
  - formatting, 276-284
  - fsck (file system check)
    - command, 275-276
  - /home directory, 264
  - /lib directory, 263
  - maintenance, 274
  - mounting, 265-270
    - at boot time, 267-269
    - interactively, 266-267
  - /proc directory, 264
  - root, 262
  - /sbin directory, 262
  - /tmp directory, 264
  - unmounting, 269-270
  - usr, 262
  - /usr directory, 264-265
  - /var directory, 264
- File Transfer, Access, and Management, see FTAM**
- File Transfer Protocol, see FTP**
- file transfers**
  - FTP, 540-549
    - anonymous FTP, 540
    - changing transfer mode, 545
    - checking transfer status, 545-553
    - ftp commands, 541-545
    - Seyon application, 194
    - troubleshooting, 549
- File-Information dialog box, 318**
- FileInfo argument (AllowOverride directive), 643**
- filelist argument (file command), 290**
- files**
  - access.conf, 634-635, 642
  - AccessFileName, 642
  - as-is (Apache), 659-660
  - backups, 227
    - considerations, 228
  - cpio command, 233-234
  - performing, 230-234
  - planning a schedule for, 229-230
  - restoring files, 230-234
  - tar utility, 231-233
  - tips, 228-229
  - binary, 290
    - extensions, 561
  - boot, IDE, 77-79
  - compressing, 315-316
  - configuration
    - Apache, 630-635
    - Apache, access.conf file, 634-635
    - Apache, httpd.conf file, 632-634
    - Apache, srm.conf file, 634
  - copying, 306-307
    - cp command, 128-129
    - XFree86 GUI, 319
  - database, setting up name servers, 496-498
  - date stamps, changing, 315
  - DBM, configuring Apache, 663
  - deleting
    - asterisk (\*) wild card, 340
    - rm command, 129
  - devices, 263, 292-293
  - directory, 291-292
  - displaying, 302-305
    - XFree86 GUI, 318
  - displaying content of
    - less command, 130
    - more command, 129-130
    - in octal notation (od command), 311
  - distribution, XFree86, 164-165
  - DOS, m- commands, 130-131
  - dosemu.conf, 140-147
  - DTD (Document Type Definition), 610
  - emacs
    - creating, 418-419
    - troubleshooting, 419-420
  - /etc/exports, NFS (Network File System), 271-272
  - /etc/diphosts, SLIP, 512
  - /etc/fstab, 267
    - fields, 267-268
    - sample file, 268
  - /etc/host.conf, configuring resolver (DNS), 491-492
  - /etc/resolv.conf, configuring resolver (DNS), 493-494
  - /etc/passwd
    - editing, 327
    - fields, 222
  - executable, 290
  - finding, find command, 313-315
  - fstab
    - fields, 267-268
    - sample, 268
  - HELP, prompt mode, 104
  - .htaccess, increasing performance of Apache servers, 670
  - httpd.conf, 632-634
  - inodes, 291-292
  - links, 292
  - Linux, 89
  - manipulating with XFree86 GUI, 316-320
    - copying files, 319
    - displaying files, 318
    - moving files, 319
    - naming files, 319
    - removing files, 319-320
  - moving, 307
    - mv command, 129
    - XFree86 GUI, 319
  - named.boot, setting up name servers, 494-496
  - named.ca, setting up name servers, 502

- named.hosts, setting up name servers, 499-501
- named.rev, setting up name servers, 501
- names, 288-297, 307
  - completion characters, 338-341
  - length, 288
  - XFree86 GUI, 319
- "ordinary," 290-291
- organizing, 305-306
- password, 262
  - editing, 327
- permissions, 293-297
  - changing with chmod command, 294
  - ownership, 294
- printing, 442-445
- reading messages from, 577-578
- readme.txt, 76
- removing, 307-309
  - XFree86 GUI, 319-320
- resource, X Windows, 175
- retrieving from remote systems, ftp commands, 544
- root, 80-81
- root directory, 291
- saving, vi editor, 399
- scoreboard (Apache), 669
- searching
  - \* (asterisk) wild card, 339-340
  - ? (question mark) wild card, 340
  - [] (square brackets) wild card, 340-341
- security
  - permissions, 242-243
  - SGID program, 243
  - SUID program, 243
- sending e-mail to (mail program), 579-580
- sending to remote systems, 545
- srm.conf, 634, 642
- TCP/IP configuration, 474-475
  - /etc/hosts file, 474-475
  - /etc/networks file, 475
- temporary, 264
- time stamps, changing, 315
- types, 289-290
- vi, creating, 394-395
- viewing contents, 309-313
  - cat command, 310
  - escaping to shell, 311
  - formats, 311-313
  - less command, 310
  - more command, 310
- which.one, 76
- writing
  - emacs editor, 423-430
  - vi editor, 399-400
- Xconfig, 168
- XFree86Config, 169-174
  - Device section, 173-174
  - Files section, 170
  - Keyboard section, 170-171
  - Monitor section, 172-173
  - Pointer section, 171-172
  - running, 174-175
  - Screen section, 174
  - ServerFlags section, 170
- filesystems command-line argument (fsck), 275
- filesystems command-line parameter (mkfs command), 284
- File Transfer Protocol, *see* FTP
- filters, 443
- find command
  - finding files, 313-315
  - flags, 314
- finding
  - files, find command, 313-315
  - host information, 533-535
    - nslookup utility, 535
    - whois utility, 533-534
  - HOWTOs, 686
  - mailing lists, 566
- Finnish HOWTO, 687
- FIPs (First non-destructive Interactive Partition Splitting), repartitioning hard drives, 50, 86
- Firewall HOWTO, 688
- flags, 337
  - F, 337
  - find command, 314
  - gzip command, 79-80
  - ls command, 302-304
  - od command, 312
  - ps command, 381
  - shutdown command, 218-219
  - t, 337
  - touch command, 315
- Flags field, 480, 486
- flames, 595, 599
- floppies, booting Linux, 216
- flush command, 507
- <FONT> tag, 619
- For Your Information (FYI), 595
- force flag, 80
- Foreign Address field, 485
- form command, 541
- formatting
  - file systems, 276-284
  - partitions, 52-56, 88
  - text, Web pages, 615-619
- fortune cookie messages, 120
- forward slash (/) character, 127
- forwarders option (named.boot file configuration), 495
- forwarding e-mail, 583-585
- FPU's (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 700
- Frequently Asked Questions, *see* FAQs
- FRiC document (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 698
- front-end processors, centralized processing models, 205
- fs-options command-line parameter (mkfs command), 283
- fsck (file system check) command, 275-276
- fstab file
  - fields, 267-268
  - sample, 268
- FTAM (File Transfer, Access, and Management), 455
- ftape, configuring Linux, 106
- Ftape HOWTO, 688
- FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 455, 540-549
  - anonymous
    - deciphering software, 254
    - troubleshooting, 549
  - anonymous FTP, 540
  - ftp commands, 541-545
    - changing directories, 544
    - changing file transfer mode, 545
    - checking transfer status, 545-553
    - ending FTP sessions, 544
    - local commands, 545
    - remote directory listing, 544
    - retrieving files from remote systems, 544
    - sending files to remote systems, 545
    - starting FTP sessions, 543
  - Red Hat installation, 44
  - sessions
    - anonymous, 546-549
    - ending, 544

- sample (Listing 27.1), 545-546
- starting, 543
- sites
  - data acquisition, 718
  - scanners supported by Linux, 716-717
  - UPSs (uninterruptible power supply), 717
  - video capture boards supported by Linux, 717
  - Web browsers, 560-561
- ftp (URLs), 557**
- FTP sites, 681-682**
  - adapters supported by Linux, 707-710
  - controllers supported by Linux, 707
  - HOWTOs, 686
  - laptops supported by Linux, 699-700
  - listing of on World Wide Web, 561
- Full Name option (Add User dialog box), 125**
- functions**
  - HP emulation, 190-191
  - TI emulation, 189-190
- fvwm window manager (X Windows), 180-181**
- FYI (For Your Information), 595**

## G

- games**
  - DOOM!, 196-197
    - installing, 196
    - starting, 197
  - Dungeon, 137-138
  - Tetris, 137
  - Trek, 138-139
- Games option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**
- Gateway field, 480**
- gateways, distributed processing models, 207**
- GCC HOWTO, 688**
- Genmask field, 480**
- German HOWTO, 688**
- get \$var command, 507**
- get command, 541, 544**
- Ghostscript (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 715-716**
- glob command, 541**
- GNU Copyleft, 24**
- GNU General Public License, 723-724**
  - applying to application development, 729-730
  - preamble, 724-725
  - terms and conditions, 725-729
- GNU General Public License (GPL), 24**
- goldstar.i file, 77**
- goldstar.s file, 78**
- gopher, 557, 564-566**
- GOSIP (Government Open System Interconnection Profile), 454**
- goto label command, 507**
- gov domain, 526**
- GPL (General Public License), 24**
- Grab dialog box (xv application), 185**
- graphical user interfaces, see GUIs**
- graphics, 625-627**
- Graphics Tools mini-HOWTO, 691**
- Gravis-UltraSound mini-HOWTO, 691**
- greater than (>) character, redirecting output, 341**
- group accounts, 242**
- group\_ID field, 222**
- groups, 225**
  - adding, 225
  - commands, 344-345
  - deleting, 225
- guest accounts, 241**
- GUI Development mini-HOWTO, 691**
- GUIs (graphical user interfaces), XFree86, 27, 316-320**
  - copying files, 319
  - displaying files, 318
  - moving files, 319
  - naming files, 319
  - removing files, 319-320
- gw gateway argument (route add command), 481**
- .gz extension, 561**
- gzip -d command, 254**

- gzip command, 76**
  - compressing files, 315
  - flags, 79-80

## H

- h flag (ps command), 381**
- hackers, 29, 238**
- halt command, 219**
- HAM HOWTO, 688**
- hard drives**
  - Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 711-712
  - partitioning, 83-89
    - FDISK, 47-49, 84-85
    - Linux installation, FDISK, 91-92
    - partitions, 47, 83-84
  - Red hat installation, 44
  - repartitioning, 31
    - adding partitions, 51-52, 87-88
    - alternatives, 50, 86
    - backing up system, 75-76
    - boot disk creation, 76-83
    - deleting partitions, 50-51, 86-87
    - FDISK, 49-56, 85-88
    - formatting partitions, 52-56, 88
    - MS-DOS boot disk creation, 75
    - root disk creation, 76-83
- hard mounts (NFS file systems), 273-275**
- hardware**
  - Alpha installation, 69
  - Ethernet cards supported under Linux, 211
  - network administrator issues, 210-211
  - problems, 30
  - software damaging, 160
  - supported by Linux, 42-45
  - support for XFree86, 165-166
- Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 688, 697, 718**
  - acknowledgments, 719
  - BIOS, 699
  - CD-ROM drives, 712-713
  - commercial X servers, 703-704
    - accelerated X 1.2, 703
    - Metro X 2.3.2, 703-704
  - computers, 699
  - controllers, 704-706
    - I/O, 706-707
    - intelligent I/O, 707

- SCSI controller, 704-706
- unintelligent I/O, 706-707
- unsupported SCSI controller, 706
- CPUs (Central Processing Units), 700
- data acquisition, 718
- diamond video cards, 701
- Ethernet adapters, 707-710
  - Amateur Radio adapters, 709
  - ARCnet adapters, 709
  - ATM adapters, 710
  - Frame Relay adapters, 710
  - ISDN adapters, 709
  - Load Balancing adapters, 710
  - PCMCIA cards, 709
  - pocket adapters, 708
  - portable adapters, 708
  - slotless adapters, 708
  - supported, 708
  - Token Ring adapters, 709
  - unsupported adapters, 710
- FPU, 700
- FRiC document, 698
- Ghostscript, 715-716
- hard drives, 711-712
- laptops, 699-700
- mice, 714
- modems, 715
- monochrome, 702
- motherboards, 699
- plotters, 715
- printers, 715
- removable drives, 713-714
- resources, 718
- scanners, 716-717
- sound cards, 710-711
- SVGALIB video cards, 701
- system architectures, 698
- tape drives, 712
- UPSs (uninterruptible power supply), 717
- video capture boards, 717
- video cards, 700-703
- XFree86 3.1.1, Unaccelerated video cards, 702
- XFree86 3.1.2, Accelerated video cards, 701-702
- hash command, 541**
- <HEAD> tag, 615**
- headings (HTML), formatting text, 615-616**
- Hebrew HOWTO, 688**
- help**
  - command, 507, 542
  - emacs editor, 416
  - flag, 80
  - mail program, 578-579
  - man command, 126
  - readme.txt file, 76
  - which.one file, 76
- HELP file, prompt mode, 104**
- Help Fvwm option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**
- hexadecimal notation, 311**
- hierarchies, 595**
  - Usenet news, 597-598
- HINFO resource records, 497**
- history command, 118**
- home businesses, 28**
- home directories, 118, 264**
  - managing, 226
- Home option (Add User dialog box), 125**
- home pages**
  - Laptop Homepage, 699
  - NCSA Mosaic, 624
- HOME variable, 332-333**
- HOME=/home/login variable, 331**
- host-based access control (Apache Web servers), 660-661**
- hosts, 490**
  - finding information about, 533-535
    - nslookup utility, 535
    - whois utility, 533-534
- Hosts option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**
- HotBot Web site, 559**
- HOWTO Index, 688**
- HOWTOs, 680**
  - copyright, 696
  - defined, 685-690
  - finding, 686
  - Hardware Compatibility, 697, 718
    - acknowledgments, 719
    - Amateur Radio adapters, 709
    - ARCnet adapters, 709
    - ATM adapters, 710
    - BIOS, 699
    - CD-ROM drives, 712-713
    - commercial X servers, 703-704
    - computers, 699
    - controllers, 704-706
    - CPUs (Central Processing Units), 700
    - data acquisition, 718
    - Ethernet adapters, 707-710
    - FPU, 700
    - Frame Relay adapters, 710
  - FRiC document, 698
  - Ghostscript, 715-716
  - hard drives, 711-712
  - I/O controllers, 706-707
  - intelligent I/O controllers, 707
  - ISDN, 709
  - laptops, 699-700
  - Load Balancing adapters, 710
  - mice, 714
  - modems, 715
  - motherboards, 699
  - PCMCIA cards, 709
  - plotters, 715
  - pocket adapters, 708
  - portable adapters, 708
  - printers, 715
  - removable drives, 713-714
  - resources, 718
  - scanners, 716-717
  - slotless adapters, 708
  - sound cards, 710-711
  - supported Ethernet adapters, 708
  - system architectures, 698
  - tape drives, 712
  - Token Ring adapters, 709
  - unintelligent I/O controllers, 706-707
  - unsupported adapters, 710
  - UPSs (uninterruptible power supplies), 717
  - video capture boards, 717
  - video cards, 700-703
- Kernel, 257
- mini-HOWTOs, 690-694
- submitting, 695
- translations, 686
- writing, 695
- HP emulation, xcalc application, 190-191**
- <HR> tag, 616**
- .htaccess files, increasing performance of Apache servers, 670**
- HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 609-610**
  - anchors, linking Web pages, 623-624
  - attributes, 614
  - documents, *see* Web pages editors, 610-613
  - formatting text
    - headings, 615-619
    - tags, 618-619
  - graphics, 625-627
  - organizing lists of information, 619-623
    - combining lists, 622-623
    - definition lists, 620-621

- displaying unordered lists, 619
  - ordered lists, 620
  - source code, 613
  - tags, 612, 613
    - <ADDRESS>, 619
    - <B>, 618
    - <BLOCKQUOTE>, 618
    - <BODY>, 615
    - <DL>, 621, 623
    - document, 614-615
    - <DT>, 621
    - <EM>, 618-619
    - <FONT>, 619
    - formatting text, 618-619
    - <HEAD>, 615
    - <HR>, 616
    - <I>, 619
    - <IMG>, 625
    - <KBD>, 619
    - lists, 623
    - <OL>, 623
    - <P>, 616
    - <PRE>, 617, 619
    - <STRIKE>, 619
    - <STRONG>, 618-619
    - <TITLE>, 612-613
    - <U>, 618-619
    - <UL>, 623
  - URLs (Uniform Resource Locators), 614
  - <HTML> tag, 614
  - HTML Validation mini-HOWTO, 691
  - HTTP (Hypertext Transport Protocol), 609
    - cookies (Apache), 653
    - redirection with Apache as-is files, 660
  - http (URLs), 557
  - HTTP+Netware mini-HOWTO, 691
  - httpd.conf file, 632-634
    - configuring Apache, 665-666
      - BindAddress directive, 665
      - PidFile directive, 665
      - Timeout directive, 666
  - hubs, distributed processing models, 207-208
  - hw argument, 477
  - hybrid networks, 208
  - hybrid topologies, 209
  - hypertext links, 556
    - graphics, 625
    - linking Web pages, 623-624
  - Hypertext Markup Language, *see* HTML
  - Hypertext Transport Protocol, *see* HTTP
- 
- I**
- i argument
    - dip command, 506
    - nestat program, 483
  - i flag (ls command), 303
  - <I> tag, 619
  - I/O controllers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 706-707
    - intelligent, 707
    - unintelligent, 706-707
  - ibmpro printer, 437
  - IconsAreLinks option (IndexOptions), 649
  - IDE boot files, 77-79
  - idle command, 542
  - IDLE field (who command), 379
  - idle terminals, preventing, 246
  - IDs
    - logins, 324
    - PID (process ID), 345
    - process, 335
    - switching, 244-245
  - if \$var op command, 507
  - if field (/etc/printcap file), 444
  - if structures, shell programming, 358
  - Iface field, 480
  - ifconfig program
    - command-line arguments, 476-477
    - configuring Ethernet interfaces, 478
    - configuring parallel IP interfaces, 479
    - configuring software loopback interfaces, 478
    - initializing Ethernet interfaces, 476-479
    - running with no arguments, 477-478
    - security, 477
  - ignore variable (mail command), 586
  - ignore\_tagfiles argument, 253
  - image command, 542
  - imagemapping (Apache), 652-653
  - <IMG> tag, 625
  - IMHO (In My Humble Opinion), 595
  - in2000.s file, 78
  - /include directory (UNIX), 298
  - includes, server-side
    - increasing performance of Apache servers, 670
    - security, 673
  - Indexes argument (AllowOverride directive), 643
  - IndexOptions control, 648-649
  - Industry Standard Architecture (ISA), 699
  - Inference Find! Web site, 559
  - INFO-SHEET, 688
  - InfoMagic, 682
  - information units (OSI model), 458
  - Infoseek Web site, 559
  - init inistring command, 508
  - init processes, 336
  - inital server startup error messages (Apache), 637
  - initializing Ethernet interfaces, 476-479
  - inline images, 625
  - inodes, 291-292
  - input
    - command groups, 344
    - processes, 336
    - redirecting, 341-342
    - vi editor, 394, 403
    - X Windows, 163
  - Input Filter field (Red Hat printers), 449
  - insecure mount option (/etc/exports file), 271
  - inserting graphics into Web pages, 625-626
  - Installation HOWTO, 688
  - installing
    - applications, terminology, 250
    - Caldera Open Linux Lite CD-ROM, 732-733
    - defined, 250
    - DOOM, 196
    - DOSEMU, 140
    - kernels, 66
    - LILO, 66, 107-111, 217



- configuring kernel with
  - append= parameter, 108
  - selecting default operating system, 108-109
  - selecting target location, 108
  - setting delay option, 108
  - uninstalling, 109-111
- Linux**
  - adding partitions, 58-60, 95-97
  - CD-ROMs, 101-102
  - creating swap partitions, 60-63, 97
  - DEC Alphas, 68-71
  - partitioning drive, 91-92
  - procedure, 52-63, 97-104
  - Red Hat, 70-71
  - selecting prompt mode, 104
  - selecting series, 102-103
  - selecting target partitions, 99-101
  - selecting where to install
    - Linux, 101-102
  - Slackware logins, 91
  - software components, 61-63
  - swap partition setup, 98-99
  - troubleshooting setup, 71-72, 115
- Red Hat, 36-43**
  - compiling system
    - information, 45-46
  - creating boot disks, 46
  - disk drives, 38-39
  - from CD-ROM, 44
  - from hard drives, 44
  - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 44
  - memory requirements, 37
  - monitor requirements, 39-40
  - NFS (network File System), 44
  - on CD-ROM accompanying book, 40-41
  - requirements, 36-43
  - space requirements, 38-39
  - starting process, 43-44
  - system buses, 37
  - system CPU, 37
- Slackware 86**
  - backing up system, 75-76
  - creating boot disks, 76-83
  - creating MS-DOS boot disk, 75
  - creating root disks, 76-83
  - preparations, 74-75
  - requirements, 74
- software**
  - multiuser systems, 251-256
  - non-Linux, 254-255
  - permissions, 255-256
  - pkgtool, 253
  - system administrator
    - responsibilities, 252
    - troubleshooting problems, 256
  - SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)
    - in U.S., 638-639
    - outside of U.S., 639-640
  - UMSDOS, 89
  - X Windows with pkg tool, 166-167
  - XFree86, 163-167
    - hardware support, 165-166
    - software, 163-165
- int domain, 526**
- intelligent controllers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 707**
- interactive mounting, mounting NFS file systems, 274**
- interactive processes, 368**
- interface argument, 476**
- interfaces**
  - Ethernet
    - configuring with ifconfig, 478
    - initializing, 476-479
    - inspecting with ifconfig
      - running, 477-478
  - GUIs (graphical user interfaces), *see* GUIs
  - IP (internet Protocol),
    - configuring with ifconfig, 479
    - network, displaying statistics with netstat program, 487-488
    - software loopback, configuring with ifconfig, 478
  - WABI (Windows Applications Binary Interface), 31
- international domains, 526-530**
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 456**
- Internet**
  - connection fields, 484-485
  - connectivity, 525
  - defined, 455
  - history, 524
  - mailing lists, 566-567
    - finding, 566
    - mail reflectors, 567
  - names, 525-531
    - domains, 526-530
    - finding host information, 533-535
    - subdomains, 531
  - networks
    - bridges, 471-472
    - configuration guidelines, 470-471
    - connections, 467-469
    - routers, 471-472
    - segmentation, 466-467
    - selecting configurations, 469-470
    - setup, 467-472
    - size, 525
    - structure, 524
    - terminology, 454-455
    - Usenet news, accessing with Web browsers, 566
    - WAIS (Wide Area Information Servers), 567
    - WWW (World Wide Web), *see* WWW
- Internet Assigned Numbers Authority Web site, 644**
- Internet Explorer (Microsoft), 557**
- Internet Protocol, *see* IP**
- Internet Service Providers, *see* ISPs**
- internetwork, 524**
- interoperability, 28**
- Interrupt key, 329**
- intr NFS mount option, 273**
- INV function, 189-190**
- IO Port Programming mini-HOWTO, 691**
- ioomega.s file, 78**
- IP (Internet Protocol), 455, 459**
  - addresses, 459-463
    - classes, 460-461, 532
    - dip command, 509-512
    - network naming, 462-463
    - NIC naming tree, 463
    - obtaining, 460-461
    - obtaining RFCs (Request For Comments), 461-472
  - interfaces, configuring with ifconfig, 479
- IP Alias mini-HOWTO, 691**
- IP Masquerade mini-HOWTO, 692**
- IPX HOWTO, 688**
- ISA (Industry Standard Architecture), 699**
- ISDN adapters, 709**
- ISO (International Organization for Standardization), 456**

ISP Hookup HOWTO, 688  
 ispell command, 371  
 ISPs (Internet service providers), 557  
 Italian HOWTO, 688  
 iterative structures, shell programming, 360-362

## J

-j flag (ps command), 381  
 Java HOWTO, 688  
 Java WorkShop mini-HOWTO, 692  
 Jaz Drive mini-HOWTO, 692  
 JE HOWTO, 688  
 jetp3852 printer, 437

## K

-k argument (rep command), 552  
 -K option  
   rlogin command, 550  
   rsh command, 551  
 -k option  
   rlogin command, 550  
   rsh command, 551  
 <KBD> tag, 619  
 Kernel HOWTO, 257, 688  
 kernel routing table  
   netstat program, 487  
   /sbin/route program, 480-483  
 Kerneld mini-HOWTO, 692  
 kernels  
   backups, 67  
   building new, 111-113  
   configuring, 67-68, 108  
   creating, 66-68  
   installing, 66  
   modifying with rdev, 111  
   upgrading, 256-257  
   versions, 324  
 keyboard settings, configuring, 65  
 Key Setup mini-HOWTO, 692  
 Keyboard HOWTO, 688  
 keys  
   Alt-Fx, 123  
   control keys, 329

HP emulation, 190-191  
 positioning emacs editor cursor  
   arrow, 424  
   big-movement keys, 425  
 positioning vi editor cursor,  
 401-402  
   arrow, 400  
   big-movement keys, 402  
 TI emulation, 189-190

Keystroke mini-HOWTO, 692  
 keywords, searching WWW (World Wide Web), 559

kill command, 369  
   terminating processes, 385-388  
   normal termination, 386  
   termination of all processes, 388  
   unconditional termination, 387-388

kill files, 604  
 Kill key, 329  
 Korn shell, 325

## L

-l command-line argument (fsck), 275  
 -L argument (file command), 290  
 l command (FDISK program), 56, 93  
 -l flag  
   ls command, 303  
   ps command, 381  
 -l lockfile option (chat program), 513  
 -L option (rlogin command), 550  
 -l option  
   rlogin command, 550  
   rsh command, 551  
 -l user argument (telnet command), 538  
 la50 printer, 437  
 la75 printer, 437  
 Laboratory for Computer Science, 160  
 LanguagePriority directive, 658  
 Laptop Homepage, 699  
 laptops (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 699-700

Large Disk mini-HOWTO, 692  
 laserjet printer, 437

layers (OSI model), 456-458  
   information units, 458  
   services provided, 457

lbp8 printer, 437  
 LBX mini-HOWTO, 692  
 lcd command, 542, 544

LDP (Linux Documentation Project), 677

left parenthesis (), TI emulation, 190

less command  
   displaying file content, 130  
   viewing file contents, 310

less than (<), redirecting input, 341

-lf command, 337

LF1000 mini-HOWTO, 692

/lib directory, 263  
 UNIX, 297

libraries  
   shared, 263  
   SSLey, 638-639

license flags, 80

licenses, 24  
   GNU General Public License, 723-724  
   applying to application development, 729-730  
   preamble, 724-725  
   terms and conditions, 725-729

LILO (Linux Loader), 74, 216-218

  configuring, 217  
   installing, 66, 107-111, 217  
   configuring kernel with append= parameter, 108  
   selecting default operating system, 108-109  
   selecting target location, 108  
   setting delay option, 108  
   uninstalling, 109-111  
 mini-HOWTO, 692  
 uninstalling, 109-111  
   configuring networks, 109-110  
   configuring sendmail, 110-111  
   replacing /etc/fstab file, 111  
   selecting time zone, 111-115  
   selection program, 110

**Limit argument (AllowOverride directive), 643**

**LINE field (who command), 378**

**link\_absolute mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**

**link\_relative mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**

**linking Web pages with anchors, 623-624**

**links, 292**

- hypertext, 556
  - graphics, 625
  - linking Web pages, 623-624
- PPP
  - automating, 513-517
  - automating with chat program, 513
  - symbolic, 292
  - security, 673-674

**-links n flag (find command), 314**

**Linux**

- advantages, 14-15, 27-29
- applications, 28
- for computer professionals, 28
- hackers, 29
- booting, 74, 89-91
- from boot managers, 216
- from floppies, 216
- mounting file systems at boot time, 267-269
- partition requirements, 48-49, 85
- troubleshooting, 71-72, 115
- communications, 19-20
- configuring, 63-64, 104-106
- baud rate, 106
- ftape, 106
- modem, 105-106
- mouse, 106
- defined, 14
- disadvantages, 14-15, 29-32
  - hardware problems, 30
  - inability to use current software, 30-31
  - lack of experience, 31
  - overcoming, 32
  - technical support, 30
- exiting, 71, 114
- features, 26
- history, 21-24
  - AT&T Bell laboratories, 21
  - Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD), 21-22
  - UNIX System Laboratories (USL), 22

**installing**

- adding partitions, 58-60, 95-97
- CD-ROMs, 101-102
- compiling system information, 45-46
- creating boot disks, 46
- creating swap partitions, 60-63, 97
- disk drive requirements, 38-40
- from CD-ROM, 44
- from hard drives, 44
- FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 44
- memory requirements, 37
- NFS (Network File System), 44
- on CD-ROM accompanying book, 40-41
- partitioning drive, 91-92
- procedure, 52-63, 97-104
- Red Hat version,
  - requirements, 36-43, 70-71
  - selecting prompt mode, 104
  - selecting series, 102-103
  - selecting target partitions, 99-101
  - selecting where to install Linux, 101-102
- Slackware logins, 91
- software components, 61-63
- space requirements, 38-39
- starting process, 43-44
- swap partition setup, 98-99
- system buses, 37
- troubleshooting setup, 71-72, 115
- installing Slackware version
  - backing up system, 75-76
  - creating boot disks, 76-83
  - creating MS-DOS boot disk, 75
  - creating root disks, 76-83
  - preparations, 74-75
  - requirements, 74
- licensing, 24
- multitasking, 16-17
- multiuser feature, 17
- portability, 20-21
- rebooting, 114
- shell programming, 18-19
- shutting down, 131-132, 218-219
- versions, Slackware 96, see Slackware

**Linux Documentation Project (LDP), 677**

Web site, 682

**linux file, 89**

**Linux Installation and Getting Started Guide, 23**

**Linux International Web site, 682**

**Linux Journal, 681**  
Web site, 681

**Linux Loader, see LILO**

**Linux Organization Web site, 682**

**Linux Source Navigator Web site, 682**

**Linux+DOS+Win95 mini-HOWTO, 692**

**Linux+DOS+Win95+OS2 mini-HOWTO, 692**

**Linux+OS2+DOS mini-HOWTO, 692**

**Linux+Win95 mini-HOWTO, 692**

**Linux+WinNT mini-HOWTO, 692**

**list flag, 80**

**listings**

- 3.1 An example of a current partition table, 57-58
- 4.1 An example of a current partition table, 93-95
- 17.1 safrm shell script, 335
- 17.2 implementing a menu shell script with case, 356
- 17.3 command-line parsing with case, 357
- 17.4 sample script that uses the test command, 359-361
- 17.5 displaying a greeting with the test command, 360-361
- 17.6 processing files with the for command, 361-362
- 17.7 repeating commands with while, 362
- 20.1 output from the ps Command, 421
- 24.1 example named.hosts file, 499
- 24.2 example named.rev file, 501
- 24.3 example named.ca file, 502
- 25.1 sample dip script for using static IP addresses over SLIP, 509-510
- 25.2 sample dip script for dynamic IP addresses, 511
- 27.1 making an FTP connection to another machine and doing a directory listing, 545-546

- 27.2 performing an anonymous FTP connection, 546-548
  - 31.1 source code for a simple HTML page, 611
  - 31.2 example heading style source, 616
  - 31.3 HTML sample showing basic text formatting, 617
  - 31.4 unordered list, 619-620
  - 31.5 ordered list, 620
  - 31.6 simple definition list, 621
  - 31.7 creating a custom list by nesting different list types, 622
  - 31.8 inserting a graphic into your script, 625-626
  - 34.1 sample access.conf file showing directory configuration information, 672-673
  - lists, 619-623**
    - combining, 622-623
    - definition lists, 620-621
    - ordered lists, 620
    - tags, 623
    - unordered lists, displaying, 619
  - lj250 printer, 437**
  - ljet2p printer, 437**
  - ljet3 printer, 437**
  - ljet4 printer, 437**
  - ljetplus printer, 437**
  - ln function, 189**
  - ln03 printer, 437**
  - Load Balancing adapters, 710**
  - Load command (xv application), 185**
  - Local Address field, 485**
  - local ftp commands, 545**
  - local value (Usenet news), 598**
  - Locales mini-HOWTO, 692**
  - lock option (pppd command), 516**
  - Lock Screen option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**
  - log function, 189**
  - LogFile rotation, automating Apache Web servers, 671-672**
  - LogFormat directive, 654-656**
  - logging out, 120, 324**
  - login username command, 123**
  - login\_directory field, 222**
  - login\_name field, 222**
  - login\_shell field, 222**
  - logins, 324**
    - as root, 119-120
    - configuring environment, 327-335
      - setting shell environment, 330-332
      - shell variables, 332-335
      - terminal, 327
    - IDs, 324
    - names, 222
      - root, 202
    - remote, telnet command, 538-539
    - root, controlling, 245-246
    - security, 240-242
      - accounts without passwords, 240
      - command accounts, 241-242
      - default accounts, 241
      - group accounts, 242
      - guest accounts, 241
      - unused accounts, 240-241
    - Slackware, 91
    - to new user accounts, 123
  - LOGNAME variable, 332, 334-353**
  - LOGNAME=login variable, 331**
  - logout command, 120, 123**
  - loopback addresses, 532**
  - loops, while, repeating commands, 361-362**
  - lp field (/etc/printcap file), 444**
  - lpc command, 440-441**
  - lpd daemon, 440**
  - lpq command, 440**
  - lpr command, 440**
  - lprm command, 440**
  - ls -l command, 292-293**
    - displaying permissions field, 243
  - ls command, 349, 542, 544**
    - color output, 304-305
    - displaying directory information, 127
    - displaying files, 302-305
    - flags, 302-304
  - Lycos Web site, 559**
- ## M
- 
- m command (fdisk program), 56, 93**
  - m flag**
    - ps command, 381
    - touch command, 315
  - m magicfile argument (file command), 290**
  - m mtu argument (dip command), 506**
  - M option (tar utility), 231**
  - m- commands, 130-131**
  - m8510 printer, 437**
  - macdef command, 542**
  - magazines, 681**
  - mail, see e-mail**
  - mail program, 572**
    - aliases, 585
    - commands, customizing mail environment, 586-587
    - customizing environment, 585-587
    - deleting e-mail, 580-581
    - environment variables, 586
    - help, 578-579
    - mailing lists, 585
    - printing e-mail, 578
    - quitting, 587-588
      - not saving changes, 588
      - saving changes, 587-588
    - reading e-mail, 575-577
      - current messages, 576
      - next messages, 577-591
    - replying to e-mail, 581-583
    - sending copies of e-mail, 584
    - sending e-mail, 572-575
      - canceling messages, 573-574
      - sending prepared messages, 574-575
      - to files, 579-580
      - writing messages while sending e-mail, 573
    - undeleting e-mail, 580-581
  - Mail Queue mini-HOWTO, 692**
  - mail reflectors, 567**
  - MAIL variable, 332-334**
  - Mail2News mini-HOWTO, 693**
  - mailing lists, 566-567, 585**
    - finding, 566
    - Linux developers, 683
    - mail reflectors, 567

- maintenance, file systems, 274**
- make command, 67, 631**
- man command, 126, 369**
- Man Page mini-HOWTO, 693**
- man pages, 681**
- managing users**
  - adding under Slackware, 120-123
  - adding with Red Hat, 123
  - logging in/out, 119-120
  - Red Hat Control Panel, 124-125
- map\_daemon mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**
- mattrib command, 130**
- Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU), 512**
- mcd command, 130**
- mcd.i file, 77**
- mcd.s file, 78**
- mcdx.i file, 77**
- mcdx.s file, 78**
- mcopy command, 130**
- McWilliams, Thomas (author of workbone CD player), 133**
- mdel command, 131**
- mdelete command, 542**
- mdir command, 131, 542**
- memory**
  - installing Red Hat, 37
  - virtual
    - swap files, 284-285
    - swap partitions, 284-285
    - virtual desktop usage (fvwm), 180
- menus**
  - gopher, 565-566
  - navigating X Windows, 178
  - Start (Red Hat), 182-183
- META-FAQ, 688**
- metoo variable (mail command), 586**
- metric cost argument (route add command), 481**
- Metric field, 480**
- metric N argument, 476**
- Metro X 2.3.2 (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 703-704**
- mformat command, 131**
- mget command, 542, 544**
- MGR HOWTO, 688**
- Microsoft Internet Explorer, see Internet Explorer (Microsoft)**
- MIDI+SB mini-HOWTO, 692**
- mil domain, 526**
- MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions), configuring Apache, 643-645**
- minicom telecommunications package, 135-136**
- Minix, 14, 21, 23**
- misc newsgroups, 597**
- mkdir command, 163, 306, 542**
  - creating new directories, 128
- mkfs command, creating file systems, 283-284**
- mlabel command, 131**
- mls command, 542**
- mmd command, 131**
- mod\_log\_config module, 654**
- mod\_negotiation.c module, 657**
- mode command, 542**
- mode SLIP | CSLIP command, 508**
- Modeline mini-HOWTO, 693**
- modem HAYES command, 508**
- modems**
  - configuring Linux system, 105-106
  - controlling for security purposes, 246
  - Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 715
- modtime command, 542**
- Module HOWTO, 689**
- modules (Apache)**
  - configurable logging, 653-656
    - NCSA compatability, 653-654
    - totally, 654-656
  - cookies, 653
  - imagemapping, 652-653
  - mod\_log\_config, 654
  - mod\_negotiation.c, 657
  - server-side includes, 650-652
- monitoring**
  - multitasking environment, 377-383
    - reporting on status of processes with ps command, 379-383
    - who command, 378-379
  - networks, administrator responsibilities, 212-213
- monitors, Red Hat installation, 39-40**
- monochrome video cards (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 702**
- more command**
  - displaying file content, 129-130
  - viewing file contents, 310
- motherboards (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 699**
- mount command**
  - arguments, 266
  - mounting file systems, 266-267
- Mount Options field (/etc/fstab file), 268**
- Mount point field (/etc/fstab file), 267**
- mounting**
  - file systems, 265-270
    - at boot time, 267-269
    - interactively, 266-267
  - NFS (Network File System), 272-276
    - /etc/fstab, 273
    - hard vs. soft, 273-275
    - interactively, 274
    - options, 273
- mouse, 42**
  - buttons
    - twm window manager, 179
    - xterm application usage, 187-188
  - configuring Linux system, 106
- moving**
  - around directories, cd command, 127
  - files, 307
  - mv command, 129
  - XFree86 GUI, 319
- Moving & Renaming Files dialog box, 319**
- mput command, 542, 545**
- mrd command, 131**
- mren command, 131**
- mru num option (pppd command), 516**
- MS-DOS**
  - boot disk, creating for Linux installation, 75
  - linux file, 89
  - UMSDOS, 88-89
- MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit), 512**

**mtu N argument**, 476

**mttype command**, 131

**multi option (/etc/host.conf file configuration)**, 492

**Multimedia option (Red Hat Start menu)**, 183

**Multiple Disks Layout mini-HOWTO**, 693

**Multiple Ethernet mini-HOWTO**, 693

**multiplication (\*), TI emulation**, 190

**Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions**, *see* MIME

**multitasking**, 368-369

- commands, 369
- controlling multiple processes, 383-388
  - nice command, 384
  - nohup command, 383-384
  - renice command, 384-385
  - terminating processes with kill command, 385-388
- cooperative, 16
- Linux, 16-17
- monitoring the system, 377-383
  - reporting on status of processes with ps command, 379-383
  - who command, 378-379
- preemptive, 16-17
- scheduling commands, 371-377
  - at command, 371-373
  - batch command, 373-374
  - cron command, 374-377
  - crontab command, 374-377
- starting background processes, 370
- starting multiple processes, 370
  - pipes, 370-371
- UNIX, 16-17

**multiuser commands**, 369

**multiuser systems**, 203-204

- centralized processing, 204-206
  - front-end processors, 205
  - servers, 205
  - terminals, 205
- client/server models, 209-210
- distributed processing, 206-209
  - bridges, 207-208
  - gateways, 207
  - hubs, 207-208
  - NICs (network interface cards), 207-208
  - repeaters, 207-208
  - routers, 207-208
  - topologies, 207-209
  - workstations, 207

- installing software, 251-256
- multiuser feature, 17

**mv command**

- moving files, 129, 307
- renaming files, 307

**mx field (/etc/printcap file)**, 445

**MX resource records**, 497

## N

**-n argument**

- nestat program, 484
- /sbin/route program, 480

**n command (fdisk program)**, 56, 93

**-n flag**

- ls command, 304
- ps command, 381

**-n option (rsh command)**, 551

**-n tracefile argument (telnet command)**, 538

**n\_5380.s file**, 78

**N\_53c7xx.s file**, 79

**n53c406a.s file**, 78

**na value (Usenet news)**, 598

**NAME field (who command)**, 378

**-name file flag (find command)**, 314

**name flag**, 80

**name servers**, 490-491, 533

- set up, 494-502
  - database files, 496-498
  - named.boot file, 494-496
  - named.ca file, 502
  - named.hosts file, 499-501
  - named.rev file, 501
  - resource records, 496-498

**named.boot file, setting up name servers**, 494-496

**named.ca file, setting up name servers**, 502

**named.hosts file, setting up name servers**, 499-501

**named.rev file, setting up name servers**, 501

**names**

- domains, 490
- files, 288-297, 307
  - completion characters, 338-341
  - length, 288
  - XFree86 GUI, 319

**Internet**, 525-531

- domains, 526-530
  - finding host information, 533-535
  - subdomains, 531
- networks, 462-463
- NIC naming tree, 463
- paths, 288-297
- tty devices, 292

**Names field (Red Hat printers)**, 449

**nameserver option (/etc/resolv.conf file)**, 493

**naming**, *see* names

**navigating**

- directories (cd command), 127
- X Windows, 178
- menus, 178
- virtual terminals, 178

**Navigator (Netscape)**, 557

- configuring to work with telnet, 564-565

**nc value (Usenet news)**, 598

**NCSA compatability (Apache)**, 653-654

**NCSA Mosaic home page**, 624

**ncsp6 printer**, 437

**negate;change sign (+/-), TI emulation**, 190

**-net ! -host argument (route add command)**, 481

**net domain**, 526

**Net**, *see* Internet

**NET-2 HOWTO**, 689

**net.i file**, 77

**net.personality, defined**, 595

**net.police, defined**, 595

**netiquette**

- defined, 595
- Usenet news newsgroups, 603-604

**netmask addr argument**, 477

**netmask mask argument (route add command)**, 481

**netmask mask command**, 508

**netmask mask option (pppd command)**, 516

**Netscape Navigator**, *see* Navigator (Netscape)

**Netscape+Proxy mini-HOWTO**, 693

- netstat program**
  - command-line arguments, 483-484
  - monitoring TCP/IP networks, 483-488
    - displaying active network connections, 484-487
    - displaying network interface statistics, 487-488
    - kernel routing table, 487
    - running with no command-line arguments, 484-487
- network administrators, 210**
  - handling peripherals, 212
  - hardware issues, 210-211
  - responsibilities, 210-214
  - setting up system network, 211
  - software issues, 210-211
  - software upgrades, 213
  - system monitoring, 212
  - training, 213-214
  - see also* system administrators
- Network File System, *see* NFS**
- Network Information Center, *see* NIC**
- network interface cards, *see* NICs**
- Network layer (OSI model), 457**
- Network News Transport Protocol (NNTP), 596**
- networks**
  - accessing, 41-42
  - adapters
    - Amateur Radio, 709
    - ARCnet, 709
    - ATM adapters, 710
    - Frame Relay adapters, 710
    - Hardware Comapatability HOWTO, 707-710
    - ISDN, 709
    - Load Balancing adapters, 710
    - PCMCIA cards, 709
    - pocket, 708
    - portable, 708
    - slotless, 708
    - supported, 708
    - Token Ring, 709
    - unsupported adapters, 710
  - administrators, 210
    - handling peripherals, 212
    - hardware issues, 210-211
    - responsibilities, 210-214
    - setting up system network, 211
    - software issues, 210-211
    - software upgrades, 213
    - system monitoring, 212
    - training, 213-214
  - configuring, 64-66
    - keyboard settings, 65
    - root password, 65-66
    - time, 65
  - fault tolerance, 468
  - hybrid, 208
  - interfaces, displaying statistics with netstat program, 487-488
  - Internet
    - bridges, 471-472
    - configuration guidelines, 470-471
    - connections, 467-469
    - routers, 471-472
    - segmentation, 466-467
    - selecting configurations, 469-470
    - setup, 467-472
  - monitoring, administrator responsibilities, 212-213
  - naming standards, 462-463
  - routing, 465-467
    - network segmentation, 466-467
    - RIP (Routing Information Protocol), 465-466
    - segmentation, 466-467
    - subnet masks, 464-465
    - subnetworks, 463-465
  - TCP/IP
    - /etc/hosts file, 474-475
    - /etc/networks file, 475
    - /sbin/route program, 479-484
  - configuration files, 65, 474-475
  - displaying active connections, 484-487
  - displaying network interface statistics, 487-488
  - kernel routing table, 487
  - monitoring with netstat program, 483-488
  - routing policies, 479
  - topologies, 207-209
    - bus topology, 208-211
    - hybrid topology, 209
    - ring topology, 209-211
    - star topology, 208
  - Usenet news, *see* Usenet news
  - see also* Ethernet
- New Shell option (Red Hat Start menu), 182**
- newbies, defined, 595**
- newer command, 542**
- news (URLs), 557**
- news distributions, Usenet news, 598**
- News HOWTO, 689**
- news newsgroups, 597**
- news readers, 594**
  - defined, 595
  - rn news reader, 604-605
  - trn, 604
- newsgroups**
  - comp.os.linux.misc, 678
  - defined, 595
  - kill files, 604
  - Usenet news, 593, 678-680
    - central authority, 599
    - culture, 599-601
    - culture of newsgroups, 600-601
    - defined, 594
    - emoticons, 600
    - hierarchies, 597-598
    - history, 596-597
    - netiquette, 603-604
    - news distributions, 598
    - posting articles to, 602-603
    - reading news, 601-602
    - replying to, 602
    - structure, 597-598
    - subscribing to, 601
    - terminology, 594-596
- Next command (xv application), 185**
- NFS (Network File System), 270-274, 455**
  - /etc/exports file, 271-272
  - exporting, 270-271
  - mounting, 272-276
    - /etc/fstab, 273
    - hard vs. soft, 273-274
    - interactively, 274
    - options, 273
  - Red Hat installation, 44
- NFS-Root mini-HOWTO, 693**
- NIC (Network Information Center), 455**
  - naming tree, 463
- nice command, 369**
  - scheduling command priority, 384
- NICs (network interface cards), distributed processing models, 207-208**
- NIS HOWTO, 689**
- nlist command, 542**
- nmap command, 542**
- NNTP (Network News Transport Protocol), 596**
- No connection at all error (Apache), 637**

no-all-squash mount option  
(/etc/exports file), 272

no-name flag, 80

no\_root\_squash mount option  
(/etc/exports file), 271

noaccess mount option  
(/etc/exports file), 272

nodes, 490  
defined, 455

noheader variable (mail  
program), 586

nohup command, 369  
background processing, 346  
controlling background  
processes, 383-384

nospoof option (/etc/host.conf  
file) configuration, 492

NOT expression, 560

NoTrapSignals flag, 170

now command,  
troubleshooting, 377

NS resource records, 497

nslookup utility  
finding host information, 535  
search information, 535

ntrans command, 542

nu option (vi environment  
setting), 411

nwp533 printer, 437

nxtterm sessions, 183

## O

-o argument (nstat  
program), 484

octal notation, 311

octets, 531

od command  
displaying file content in octal  
notation, 311  
flags, 312  
pre-POSIX format  
specifications, 312

oki182 printer, 437

<OL> tag, 623

olwm window manager  
(X Windows), 181

ON function, 190

online documentation, 680-681  
HOWTOs, 680  
copyright, 696  
defined, 685, 687-690  
finding, 686  
Hardware Compatibility, *see*  
Hardware Compatibility  
HOWTO  
mini-HOWTOs, 690-694  
submitting, 695  
translations, 686  
writing, 695  
man pages, 681

Online Support mini-HOWTO,  
693

open command, 542

open file error messages  
(Apache), 636

Open Linux Lite CD-ROM,  
731-732  
distribution, 733-734  
installing, 732-733

Open System Interconnection,  
*see* OSI

open systems, 28

Open Text Index Web site, 559

opening files, emacs  
editor, 420

operating systems, defined, 14

optics.i file, 77

optics.s file, 79

Options argument  
(AllowOverride directive), 643

Options menu commands  
(Netscape Navigator),  
Preferences, 564

OR expression, 560

order option (/etc/host.conf file  
configuration option), 491

ordered lists, 620

"ordinary" files, 290-291

org domain, 526

organizing files, 305-306

OS/2, booting, 48-50, 85

OSI (Open System  
Interconnection), 456-458  
layers, 456-458  
information units, 458  
services provided, 457  
protocols, 456

output

command  
groups, 344  
substituting, 354-355  
printing, troubleshooting, 447  
processes, 336  
redirecting, 341-342  
X Windows, 162

overwriting files, vi editor, 400

owner field, 496

ownership

file permissions, 294  
Linux, 24

## P

-p argument (rcp command),  
552

p command (fdisk program),  
56, 93

<P> tag, 616

Pager mini-HOWTO, 693

paintjet printer, 437

PAP (Password Authentication  
Protocol), 518

Parallel IP (PLIP), configuring  
with ifconfig, 479

parameters, 338

assigning values to  
variables, 354  
command-line, mkfs command,  
283-284  
DOSEMU, 147

parity E|O|N command, 508

parsing, 18, 336-345  
flags, 337  
parameters, 338

Partition mini-HOWTO, 693

partition tables, 47, 57-58, 83,  
93-95

partitioning hard drives, 83-89  
FDISK, 47-49, 84-85  
partitions, 47, 83-84  
repartitioning, *see* repartitioning  
hard drives

partitions, 47, 83-84

adding, 51-52, 87-88  
installing Linux, 58-60, 95-97  
LILO installation, 108-109  
codes, fdisk, 278-279



- creating
  - changing types, 282
  - fdisk, 276-282
  - rechecking table sizes, 281-282
  - rechecking tables, 280-281
  - swap partitions, 281
- current tables, fdisk (creating disk partitions), 280
- deleting, 50-51, 86-87
- formatting, 52-56, 88
- Linux types, 57-58, 94-95
- new, creating (fdisk), 280
- selecting for Linux installation, 99-101
- sizing, 50-51, 86-87
- swap partitions
  - creating, 60-63, 97
  - setup, 98-99
- pas16.s file, 79**
- Pass Number field (/etc/fstab file), 268**
- passive command, 542**
- passive option (pppd command), 516**
- Password Authentication Protocol (PAP), 518**
- password command, 508**
- password file, 262**
  - editing, 327
- Password option (Add User dialog box), 125**
- passwords, 222**
  - accounts without, 240
  - changing, 125-126
  - length, 224, 239
  - logging in as root account, 119-120
  - security, 239-240
  - selecting, 239-240
  - setting, 223-224
- pasting text**
  - emacs editor, 430
  - vi editor, 408-410
- patch command, 112**
- Path field, 486**
- PATH variable, 331-334**
- paths, names, 288-297**
- PCI (Peripheral Component Interconnect) bus, 699**
- PCI HOWTO, 689**
- PCMCIA**
  - cards, 709
  - drivers, 700
  - HOWTO, 689
- pcmcia.gz file, 81**
- pdksh shell, 325**
- percent sign (%), prompt for C shell, 325**
- performance, Apache Web servers**
  - as-is files, 671
  - .htaccess files, 670
  - server-side includes, 670
- Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) bus, 699**
- peripherals, handling as network administrator, 212**
- permissions, 242-243**
  - displaying field, ls -l command, 243
  - files, 293-297
    - changing with chmod command, 294
    - ownership, 294
    - installing software, 255-256
- pgm1 command, 306**
- Physical layer (OSI model), 457**
- physical security, 238-239**
- PI function, 189**
- PID (process ID), 345**
  - ps command, 380
  - who command, 379
- PidFile directive, 665**
- pipes, starting multiple processes, 370-371**
- pipes (;), connecting processes with, 341**
- pj printer, 437**
- ppd printer, 437**
- pxl300 printer, 437**
- pkgtool**
  - command, arguments, 253
  - installing software, 253
  - installing X Windows, 166-167
- PLIP (Parallel IP), configuring with ifconfig, 479**
- PLIP mini-HOWTO, 693**
- plotters (Hardware Compatability HOWTO), 715**
- pocket adapters, 708**
- Point-to-Point Protocol, see PPP**
- Polish HOWTO, 689**
- POP (Post Office Protocol) mail, 570**
- port argument (telnet command), 539**
- port dev command, 508**
- port error messages (Apache), 636-637**
- portability**
  - Linux, 20-21
  - UNIX, 20-21
- portable adapters, 708**
- Portable Operating System Interface, see POSIX**
- portmap daemon (NFS), 271**
- Portuguese HOWTO, 689**
- positioning**
  - emacs editor cursor
    - arrow keys, 424
    - big-movement keys, 425
  - vi editor cursor, 401-402
    - arrow keys, 400
    - big-movement keys, 402
- POSIX (Portable Operating System Interface), 28**
- Post Office Protocol (POP) mail, 570**
- posting**
  - articles to newsgroups, 602-603
  - defined, 595
- PostScript printers, 448**
- pound sign (#), 120**
- PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol), 505**
  - automating links, 513-517
    - chat program, 513
    - creating chat scripts, 514-515
    - pppd command, 515-517
  - HOWTO, 689
  - requirements, 506
  - securing links, 518-519
  - services, 517-518
- PPP-over-ISDN mini-HOWTO, 693**
- pppd command, 515-517**
  - command-line options, 515-516
- <PRE> tag, 617, 619**
- preamble, GNU General Public License, 724-725**
- preemptive multitasking, 16-17**
- Preferences command (Options menu), Netscape Navigator, 564**
- Preferences option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**

- Presentation layer (OSI model), 457**
- Prev command (xv application), 185**
- Primary Group option (Add User dialog box), 125**
- primary option (named.boot file configuration), 494**
- print command, 508**
- Print command (xv application), 185**
- print flag (find command), 314**
- Print2Win mini-HOWTO, 693**
- printcap entries, creating test entries, 445-446**
- Printer Device field (Red Hat printers), 449**
- PRINTER environment variable, setting, 445**
- printers, 43-48**
  - configuring, 438
  - /dev/lp0 printer, 446-448
  - Red Hat, 448-449
  - Hardware Compatability HOWTO, 715
  - network administrators, 212
  - PostScript, 448
  - selecting, 436-438
  - troubleshooting, 448
- printing**
  - applications, 439-441
  - creating test printcap entries, 445-446
  - directories, 441-442
  - e-mail, 578
  - files, 442-445
  - filters, 443
  - printers, *see* printers
  - process, 438-439
  - spools (Simultaneous Peripheral Operation Off Line), 436, 438
  - troubleshooting
    - error messages, 447
    - output, 447
- Printing HOWTO, 689**
- Printing Usage HOWTO, 689**
- probeonly mode, running X Windows, 175**
- /proc directory, 264**
- Process Accounting mini-HOWTO, 693**
- process ID (PID), 345**
- processes, 335-336, 368**
  - background processing, 345-346
    - at command, 346-347
    - batch command, 347
    - cron daemon, 346-348
    - crontab command, 347
    - nohup command, 346
  - batches, 368
  - connecting with pipes (|), 341
  - controlling, 383-388
    - nice command, 384
    - nohup command, 383-384
    - renice command, 384-385
  - daemons, 368
  - exec, 336
  - IDs, 335
  - init, 336
  - input, 336
  - interactive, 368
  - output, 336
  - reporting on status with ps command, 379-383
  - scheduling commands, 371-377
    - at command, 371-373
    - batch command, 373-374
    - cron command, 374-377
    - crontab command, 374-377
  - starting
    - background, 370
    - multiple, 370
    - with pipes, 370-371
  - terminating with kill command, 385-388
    - normal termination, 386
    - termination of all processes, 388
    - unconditional termination, 387-388
- programming, shell, 355-362**
  - case structure, 356-357
  - finding exit status, 357
  - if structures, 358
  - iterative structures, 360-362
  - shell scripts, 351-355
  - test command, 358-360
- programs, *see* applications**
- Project Athena, 160**
- prompt command, 542**
- Proto field, 484, 486**
- protocols**
  - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 540-549
    - anonymous FTP, 540
    - ftp commands, 541-545
  - HTTP (Hypertext Transport Protocol), 609
  - IP (Internet Protocol), 455
  - NNTP (Network News Transport Protocol), 596
  - OSI model, 456
  - PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol), 505
    - automating links, 513-517
    - automating links with chat program, 513
    - creating chat scripts, 514-515
    - pppd command, 515-517
    - requirements, 506
    - securing links, 518-519
    - services, 517-518
  - RIP (Routing Information Protocol), 455, 465-466
  - SLIP (Serial Line Internet Protocol), 505
    - automating operations, 506-512
    - creating accounts, 512
    - /etc/diphosts file, 512
    - requirements, 506
  - SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), 455, 572
  - SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol), 455
  - SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)
    - installing in U.S., 638-639
    - installing outside of U.S., 639-640
    - setting up, 637-639
  - TCP (Transmission Control Protocol), 455
  - TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol), 27, 453
    - history, 454
    - stack, 458-459
  - Telnet, 455
  - UDP (User Datagram Protocol), 455
  - UUCP (UNIX-to-UNIX Copy Program), 596
- Proxy ARP mini-HOWTO, 693**
- proxy command, 542**
- ps command, 245, 369, 635**
  - flags, 381
  - output (Listing 20.1), 421
  - output headings, 380
  - reporting on status of processes, 379-383
- PS1 variable, 333-334**
- PS1=prompt variable, 331**
- PTR resource records, 497**
- publicly writable spaces, Web server security, 674**
- put command, 542, 545**
- pwd command, 542**
- PWD=directory variable, 331**

## Q

**q command (fdisk program),** 56, 93

**-q flag (ls command),** 304

**qlog fas.s file,** 79

**qlog isp.s file,** 79

**Que Publishing Web site,** 682

**Que's HTML Quick Reference Web site,** 614

**question mark (?) wild card,** 340

**quiet flag,** 80

**quit command,** 508, 542

**quitting**

- emacs editor, 420-422
- Linux, 71
- mail program, 587-588
  - not saving changes, 588
  - saving changes, 587-588
- vi editor, 396-397
- see also* exiting

**Quota mini-HOWTO,** 693

**quotation marks ("),** 343

**quote command,** 542

**quotes (" " ), searching,** 559

**quoting, defined,** 595

## R

**-r command-line argument (fsck),** 275

**-r argument**

- nestat program, 484
- rcp command, 552

**R command,** 582

**r command,** 582

**-r flag**

- ls command, 304
- ps command, 381

**-r option (crontab command),** 377

**R v key,** 191

**r- commands,** 549-552

- rcp, 552
- rlogin, 550
- rsh, 551

**r4081 printer,** 437

**raw mode, device driver,** 328

**rawrite,** 76

- creating root disks for Linux installation, 46, 81-83
- error codes, 81-82

**RCL function,** 190-191

**rcp command,** 552

**rdev, modifying kernel with,** 111

**Reactivate button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager),** 124

**read command, assigning values to variables,** 353

**Read the Fripping Manual (RTFM),** 595

**reading**

- e-mail
  - from other files, 577-578
  - mail program, 575-577
  - while sending mail, 578
- newsgroups, 601-602

**Reading List,** 693

**readme.txt file,** 76

**reboot command,** 219

**rebooting Linux,** 71, 114

**rec newsgroups,** 597

**receiving e-mail,** 570

**recv command,** 542

**Recv-Q field,** 484

**Red Hat,** 32

- adding users, 123
- commercial programs, 32
- configuring printers, 448-449
- Control Panel, managing users, 124-125
- fortune cookie messages, 120
- installing, 36-43, 70-71
  - compiling system information, 45-46
  - creating boot disks, 46
  - DEC Alphas, 68-71, 70-71
  - disk drives, 38-39
  - from CD-ROM, 44
  - from hard drives, 44
  - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 44
  - memory requirements, 37
  - monitor requirements, 39-40
  - NFS (network File System), 44
  - on CD-ROM accompanying book, 40-41
  - requirements, 36-43
  - space requirements, 38-39
  - starting process, 43-44
  - system buses, 37
  - system CPU, 37

- shells, 325
- supported Alpha hardware, 69
- X Windows applications, 181-185
  - nxterm, 183
  - Start menu, 182-185
  - xv, 183-185

**Redirect directive, configuring Apache,** 645-646

**redirecting**

- input, 341-342
- output, 341-342

**redirection, HTTP, Apache as-is files,** 660

**redraw option (vi environment setting),** 411

**Ref field,** 480

**RefCnt field,** 486

**RefererLog directive,** 654

**reget command,** 542

**relative path names,** 288

**relative permissions (chmod command),** 296

**Remote Boot mini-HOWTO,** 693

**remote directory listing (ftp commands),** 544

**Remote Host field (Red Hat printers),** 449

**remote logins (telnet command),** 538-539

**Remote Monitor, (RMON),** 455

**Remote Procedure Call, see** RPC

**Remote Queue field (Red Hat printers),** 449

**remote systems**

- retrieving files from, ftp commands, 544
- sending files to, ftp commands, 545

**removable drives (Hardware Compatability HOWTO),** 713-714

**Remove button (RHS Linux User/Group Manager),** 124

**Remove File dialog box,** 319

**removing**

- applications, 256
- files, 307-309
  - XFree86 GUI, 319-320
- users, 224-225
- see also* deleting

- rename command, 543**
- renaming, see names**
- renice command, 369**
  - scheduling command priority, 384-385
- repartitioning hard drives, 31, 85-88**
  - adding partitions, 51-52, 87-88
  - alternatives, 50, 86
  - backing up system, 75-76
  - boot disk creation, 76-83
  - deleting partitions, 50-51, 86-87
  - formatting partitions, 52-56, 88
  - MS-DOS boot disk creation, 75
  - root disk creation, 76-83
- repeaters, distributed processing models, 207-208**
- repeating commands, 361-362**
- replacing**
  - /etc/fstab file, 111
  - contents of buffer (emacs editor), 423
  - text
    - emacs editor, 428-429
    - vi editor, 406-407
- replying**
  - to e-mail (mail program), 581-583
  - to newsgroups, 602
- report option (vi environment setting), 411**
- Request For Comments, see RFCs**
- rescue.gz file, 81**
- reset command, 508, 543**
- Reset failed error, 82**
- resolve, 490**
- resolvers, 490-491, 533**
  - configuring, 491-494
  - /etc/host.conf file, 491-492
  - /etc/resolv.conf file, 493-494
- resource files (X Windows), 175**
- resource records**
  - fields, 496-497
  - setting up name servers, 496-498
  - types, 497
- resources**
  - accessing, 614
  - FTP sites, 681-682
  - HOWTOs, *see* HOWTOs
  - InfoMagic, 682
  - Linux developers, 683
  - magazines, 681
- online documentation, see online documentation**
- Usenet news, 593, 678**
  - central authority, 599
  - culture, 599-601
  - defined, 594
  - emoticons, 600
  - hierarchies, 597-598
  - history, 596-597
  - kill files, 604
  - netiquette, 603-604
  - news distributions, 598
  - posting articles to, 602-603
  - reading news, 601-602
  - replying to newsgroups, 602
  - structure, 597-598
  - subscribing to, 601
  - terminology, 594-596
  - user authentication, 661-662
  - Web sites, 682
  - xgrab application, 195-197
- restart command, 543**
- restoring**
  - compressed files, 316
  - files, 230-234
  - cpio command, 233-234
  - tar utility, 231-233
- retrieving**
  - files from remote systems, ftp commands, 544
  - files into buffer (emacs editor), 423
- reverses, 490**
- RFCs (Request For Comments), 455, 525**
  - obtaining, 461-472
- rhelph command, 543**
- RHS Add/Edit User dialog box, 126**
- right parenthesis ()), TI emulation, 190**
- ring topologies, 209-211**
- RIP (Routing Information Protocol), 455, 465-466**
- rlogin command, 550**
- rm command**
  - deleting files, 129
  - removing files, 307-309
- rm field (/etc/printcap file), 444**
- rmdir command, 543**
  - deleting directories, 128
- RMON (Remote Monitor), 455**
- rn news reader, 604-605**
- ro mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**
- ROFL (Rolling On the Floor, Laughing), 595**
- root accounts**
  - logging in, 119-120
  - passwords, changing, 125-126
- root disks**
  - Alpha installation, 69-70
  - creating (Slackware installation), 76-83
- root file system, 262**
  - directory file, 291
  - root files, 80-81
- root logins**
  - controlling, 245-246
  - name, 202
- root password, selecting, 65-66**
- Root Password dialog box, 65**
- root\_squash mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**
- route add command, command-line arguments, 481**
- route command, deleting routes, 483**
- routers, 465**
  - crashes, 466
  - distributed processing models, 207-208
  - Internet networks, 471-472
- routing, 465-467**
  - network segmentation, 466-467
  - RIP (Routing Information Protocol), 465-466
  - TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) deciding on policy, 479
  - /sbin/route program, 479-484
- Routing Information Protocol, see RIP**
- rp field (/etc/printcap file), 444**
- RPC (Remote Procedure Call), 455**
- rpc.mountd daemon (NFS), 271**
- rpc.nfsd daemon (NFS), 271**
- RSA Data Security, Inc. Web site, 638**
- rsh command, 551**
- rsize=n NFS mount option, 273**
- rstatus command, 543**
- RIFM (Read the Fripping Manual), 595**
- runique command, 543**

**running**

- configure script for Apache compilation, 631
- DOSEMU, 147-156
  - configuring, 140-147
  - installing, 140
  - running, 147-156
- fdisk, creating disk partitions, 279
- netstat with no command-line arguments, 484-487
- SuperProbe, 168-169
- Windows applications under Linux, 157-158
- XF86Config file, 174-175

**rw mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**

**S**

- s command-line argument (fsck), 275
- S flag (ps command), 381
- s flag
  - ls command, 304
  - ps command, 381
- safrm shell script (Listing 17.1), 335**
- sanyo.i file, 77**
- sanyo.s file, 79**
- Save command (xv application), 185**
- saving**
  - buffer (emacs editor), 423-430
  - buffer (vi editor), 399-400
  - as new file, 400
  - overwriting files, 400
  - to current file, 399-400
  - e-mail, ? prompt, 580
  - files, vi editor, 399
  - mail program changes
  - when quitting mail program, 587-588
- /sbin directory, 262**
- /sbin/route program, 479-484**
  - command-line arguments, 480
  - deleting routes, 483
  - kernel routing table, 480-483
  - routing examples, 482-483
  - static routes, adding, 481-483
- sbpcd.i file, 77**
- sbpcd.s file, 79**
- sc spreadsheet calculator, 134**

**ScanHTMLTitles option (IndexOptions), 649**

**scanners (Hardware Compatability HOWTO), 716-717**

- scheduling commands**
- at command, 371-373
  - batch command, 373-374
  - cron command, 374-377
  - crontab command, 374-377

**sci newsgroups, 597**

**scoreboard files (Apache), 669**

**screen**

- clearing, clear command, 130
- emacs editor, 417, 424

**Screensaver option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**

**script option (chat program), 513**

**script programming, 213**

**ScriptAlias directive, configuring Apache, 645-646**

**scriptfile argument (dip command), 506**

**scripting languages (Seyon application), 194**

**scripts**

- activating, AddType directive, 646
- CGI
  - creating server-pushes with, 659
  - security, 672-673
- chat, creating, 514-515
- configure, running for Apache server, 631
- shell, 350-362
  - comments, 352
  - creating, 350-351
  - echo command, 351-352
  - programming, 355-362
  - special characters, 355
  - variables, 352-355
  - writing programs, 351-355

**SCSI**

- controllers (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 704-706
- HOWTO, 689
- Programming HOWTO, 689

**scsi.s file, 79**

**scsinet.s file, 79**

**seagate.s file, 79**

**search command (emacs editor), 428**

**search engines, 559**

- AltaVista, 673
- archie, 562-564
- telnet, 564-565

**search information (nslookup utility), 535**

**search option (/etc/resolv.conf file), 493**

**Search.Com Web site, 559**

**searching**

- "" (quotes), 559
- emacs editor, 427-429
  - search command, 428
  - troubleshooting, 428
- files
  - \* (asterisk) wild card, 339-340
  - ? (question mark) wild card, 340
  - [] (square brackets) wild card, 340-341
- vi editor, 407-408
- WWW (World Wide Web), 558-560
  - archie, 562-564
  - gopher, 565-566
  - telnet, 564-565

**secondary option (named.boot file configuration), 494**

**seconds field (ps command), 380**

**SECONDS variable, 333**

**Sector not found error, 82**

**secure mount option (/etc/exports file), 271**

**Secure Sockets Layer protocol, see SSL**

**security, 237-238**

- breaches, 247-248
- CGI scripts, 672-673
- controlling crackers, 246
- controlling modems, 246
- controlling root login, 245-246
- enforcing, 246-248
- files, 242-243
- ifconfig program, 477
- logging in, 240-242
  - accounts without passwords, 240
  - command accounts, 241-242
  - default accounts, 241
  - group accounts, 242
  - guest accounts, 241
  - unused accounts, 240-241

- passwords, 239-240
  - see also* passwords
- performing backups, 248
- physical, 238-239
- preventing idle terminals, 246
- ps command, 245
- securing PPP links, 518-519
- server-side includes, 673
- social engineering, 244
- su command, 244-245
- Web servers, publicly writable spaces, 674
- Web sites
  - CGI scripts, 672-673
  - server-side includes, 673
  - symbolic links, 673-674
- Seek operation failed error, 82**
- segmentation, networks, 466-467**
- selecting**
  - configurations for Internet networks, 469-470
  - default operating system for LILO installation, 108-109
  - Linux installation place, 101-102
  - passwords, 239-240
  - printers, 436-438
  - prompt mode, 104
  - series for Linux installation, 102-103
  - target partitions for Linux installation, 99-101
  - text, 119
  - time zone, 111-115
- selection program, 110**
- send command, 543**
- send text command, 508**
- Send-Q field, 485**
- sending**
  - e-mail, 570-571
    - copies, 584
    - mail program, 572-575
    - to files with mail program, 579-580
    - while reading e-mail, 578-583
  - files to remote systems, ftp commands, 545
- sendmail, configuring, 110-111**
- Sendmail+UUCP mini-HOWTO, 694**
- Sense operation failed error, 82**
- Serial HOWTO, 689**
- Serial Line Internet Protocol, *see* SLIP**
- server root (Apache), 631**
- server-pushes, creating with CGI scripts, 659**
- server-side includes, 650-652**
  - increasing performance of Apache servers, 670
  - security, 673
- servers, 556**
  - Apache
    - automating logfile rotation, 671-672
    - compiling, 630-631
    - configuring, 642-650
    - controlling server child processes, 668-669
    - editing Configuration file, 630-631
    - host-based access control, 660-661
    - increasing performance with .htaccess file, 670
    - increasing performance with as-is files, 671
    - increasing performance with server-side includes, 670
    - make command, 631
    - running configure script, 631
  - archie, 562-563
  - centralized processing models, 205
  - commercial X (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 703-704
  - names, 490-491, 533
    - database files, 496-498
    - named.boot file, 494-496
    - named.ca file, 502
    - named.hosts file, 499-501
    - named.rev file, 501
    - resource records, 496-498
    - set up, 494-502
  - security
    - CGI scripts, 672-673
    - publicly writable spaces, 674
- services**
  - OSI model, 457
  - PPP (point-to-point protocol), 517-518
- Session layer (OSI model), 457**
- set command**
  - mail program, 586
  - setting environment options for vi editor, 411-412
- set search command, 563**
- sets setlist argument, 253**
- setting**
  - environment options, vi editor, 410-413
  - passwords, 223-224
  - PRINTER environment variable, 445
- Setup program**
  - exiting, 114
  - installing Linux, *see* installing, Linux
- Seyon application, 192-194**
  - dialing directory, 193
  - features, 194
  - file transfers, 194
  - scripting language, 194
  - terminal emulation, 193
  - translation modes, 194
- sf field (/etc/printcap file), 444**
- SGID program, 243**
- SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language), 610**
- sh field (/etc/printcap file), 444**
- sh shell, 325**
  - see also* Bourne shell
- Shadow Password HOWTO, 689**
- shared libraries, 263**
- shareware programs, 184**
- shell environment, 327**
  - configuring
    - setting environment, 330-332
    - shell variables, 332-335
- Shell option (Add User dialog box), 125**
- shell programming, 18-19**
- SHELL variable, 332**
- SHELL=shell variable, 331**
- shells, 325-336**
  - background processing, 345-346
  - bash, 213, 326
  - Bourne, 325
    - variables, 331
  - C, 325
  - command parsing, 336-345
    - flags, 337
    - parameters, 338
  - commands
    - adding text, 349
    - aliasing, 349
    - completing, 349
    - defining aliases, 364-365
    - editing, 348
    - repeating with while loop, 361-362
    - viewing history, 348

- csh, 326
- customizing, 362-364
  - defining command aliases, 364-365
  - exporting variables to new shells, 362-364
- escaping to, 311
- Korn, 325
- programming, 355-362
  - case structure, 356-357
  - finding exit status, 357
  - if structures, 358
  - iterative structures, 360-362
  - test command, 358-360
- Red Hat, 325
- scripts, 350-362
  - comments, 352
  - creating, 350-351
  - echo command, 351-352
  - special characters, 355
  - variables, 352-355
  - writing programs, 351-362
- sh, 325
- Slackware, 325
- types, 325-327
- variables, substituting, 342-343
- show search command, 563**
- showmode option, setting environment options for vi editor, 412**
- shutdown command**
  - flags, 218-219
  - shutting down Linux, 131-132
  - syntax, 218
- shutting down Linux, 114, 131-132, 218-219**
- sig files, see signatures**
- signal-to-noise, defined, 595**
- signatures, 595**
- silent option (pppd command), 516**
- Simple Mail Transport Protocol (SMTP), 572**
- Simple Network Management Protocol, (SNMP), 455**
- Simultaneous Peripheral Operation Off Line, see spools**
- sin function, 189**
- single dot (.) directories, 288**
- site command, 543**
- sites**
  - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 681-682
    - adapters supported by Linux, 707-710
    - controllers supported by Linux, 707
    - data acquisition, 718
    - HOWTOs, 686
    - laptops supported by Linux, 699-700
    - listing of on WWW (World Wide Web), 561
    - scanners supported by Linux, 716-717
    - UPSs (uninterruptible power supply), 717
    - video capture boards supported by Linux, 717
  - Web, 682
    - adapters supported by Linux, 707-710
    - Alta Vista, 558, 673
    - AOLpress, 611
    - Caldera, 33
    - European Linux, 682
    - Excite, 559
    - HotBot, 559
    - Inference Find!, 559
    - Infoseek, 559
    - Internet Assigned Numbers Authority, 644
    - laptops supported by Linux, 699-700
    - Linux Documentation Project, 682
    - Linux International, 682
    - Linux Journal, 681
    - Linux Organization, 682
    - Linux Source Navigator, 682
    - Lycos, 559
    - Open Text Index, 559
    - Que Publishing, 682
    - Que's *HTML Quick Reference*, 614
    - RSA Data Security, Inc., 638
    - Search.Com, 559
    - security, *see* security, Web sites
    - Software Homesite, 611
    - SSLey library, 639
    - system architectures for Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 698
    - Verisign, 639
    - Yahoo!, 558, 682
- size command, 543**
- size**
  - Internet, 525
  - partition tables, 281-282
- size n[c] flag (find command), 314**
- sizing**
  - partitions, 50-51, 86-87
  - windows, twm window manager, 179
- Slackware**
  - adding users, 120-123
  - elm mailer, 588-591
    - elm command, 589-591
    - starting, 588-589
  - installing
    - backing up system, 75-76
    - boot disk creation, 76-83
    - creating MS-DOS boot disk, 75
    - preparations, 74-75
    - requirements, 74
    - root disk creation, 76-83
  - fortune cookie messages, 120
  - Linux setup screen, 98
  - logins, 91
  - root images, 80-81
  - shells, 325
  - upgrading, 114
  - workbone CD player, 133
  - XFree86, manipulating files, 316-320
  - X Windows applications, 185-195
    - Seyon, 192-194
    - xcalc, 188-191
    - xgrab, 194-195
    - xlock, 195
    - xspread, 191-192
    - xterm, 186-188
- slave option (named.boot file configuration), 495**
- sleep num command, 508**
- SLIP (Serial Line Internet Protocol), 505**
  - accounts, creating, 512
  - automating operations, dip command, 506-512
  - configuring with ifconfig, 479
  - /etc/diphosts file, 512
  - requirements, 506
- SLIP+proxyARP mini-HOWTO, 693**
- slotless adapters, 708**
- Slovenian HOWTO, 689**

- sm option (vi environment setting), 411
- smart terminals, 205
- SMB HOWTO, 689
- smd option (vi environment setting), 411
- smileys, defined, 596
- smoke, effect on system, 238
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transport Protocol), 572
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol), 455
- SOA resource records, 498
- soc newsgroups, 597
- social engineering, 244
- soft mounts, NFS file systems, 273-275
- soft NFS mount option, 273
- software
  - damaging hardware, 160
  - deciphering packages, 254
  - disadvantages of Linux, 30-31
  - installing, 61-63
    - multiuser systems, 251-256
    - non-Linux, 254-255
    - permissions, 255-256
    - pkgtool, 253
    - system administrator responsibilities, 252
    - troubleshooting problems, 256
  - network administrator issues, 210-211
  - upgrading, 213
    - backups, 251
    - considerations, 250-251
    - kernels, 256-257
  - XFree86, installing, 163-165
- Software Homesite Web site, 611
- software loopback interfaces, configuring with ifconfig, 478
- sound cards (Hardware Compatability HOWTO), 710-711
- Sound HOWTO, 690
- Sound Playing HOWTO, 690
- source code, HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 613
- source\_device dev argument, 253
- source\_dir dir argument, 253
- source\_mounted argument, 253
- space requirements, Linux installation, 38-39
- Spanish HOWTO, 690
- sparc printer, 437
- special characters, shell scripts, 355
- speed num command, 508
- speed option (pppd command), 515
- spoofs, 490
- Spool Directory field (Red Hat printers), 449
- spools (Simultaneous Peripheral Operation Off Line), 436, 438
- spreadsheet calculator (sc), 134
- spreadsheets (xspread application), 191-192
- SQR function, 189
- square brackets ([]) wild card, 340-341
- squash-gids mount option (/etc/exports file), 272
- squash-uids mount option (/etc/exports file), 272
- srm.conf file, 634, 642
- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer protocol)
  - setting up, 637-639
  - installing in U.S., 638-639
  - installing outside of U.S., 639-640
- SSLey library, 638-639
- stack, TCP/IP, 458-459
- Stallman, Richard (creator of emacs editor), 416
- standard error output (stderr), 336
- Standard Generalized Markup Language, *see* SGML
- standard input (stdin), 336
- standard output (stdout), 336
- star topologies, 208
- Start menu (Red Hat), 182-183
- starting
  - Apache, 635-636
  - DOOM, 197
  - elm mailer, 588-589
  - emacs editor, 416-417
    - from existing file, 419-420
  - FTP sessions, 543
  - processes
    - background, 370
    - multiple, 370
    - with pipes, 370-371
  - Red Hat installation, 43-44
  - telnet, 564
  - tutorial (emacs editor), 417
  - vi editor, 393
    - from existing file, 395-396
- State field, 485-486
- static IP addresses (dip command), 509-510
- static routes (/sbin/route program), 481-483
- status command, 543
- Status error, 82
- status line (vi editor), 392
- stderr (standard error output), 336
- stdin (standard input), 336
- stdout (standard output), 336
  - flag, 79
- sticky windows, 181
- STO function, 190-191
- stopbits bits command, 508
- <STRIKE> tag, 619
- <STRONG> tag, 618-619
- struct command, 543
- stty command, 329
- su command, 244-245
- su username command, 123
- subdirectories, 264-265
- subdomains, 531
- subnet masks, 464-465
- subnetworks, 463-465
- subscribing to newsgroups, 601
- subshells, 344-345
- substituting
  - command output, 354-355
  - commands, 343-344
  - shell variables, 342-343
- suffix flag, 80
- SUID program, 243



SUM function, 190-191  
 sunique command, 543  
 SunOS (Sun Microsystems), 22  
 SuperProbe, running, 168-169  
 superusers, 119, 202  
   defined, 250  
 Suppress Headers field  
   (Red Hat printers), 449  
 SuppressDescription option  
   (IndexOptions), 649  
 surge suppressers, 238  
 suspending emacs editor, 421  
 SVGALIB video cards  
   (Hardware Compatibility  
   HOWTO), 701  
 swap files, 284-285  
 swap partitions, 284-285  
   creating, 60-63, 97, 284-285  
   setup, 98-99  
 Swap Space mini-HOWTO, 694  
 switching  
   between emacs, 421  
   user IDs, 244-245  
 symbolic links, 292  
   security, 673-674  
 system administrators, 31,  
 119, 201-202, 250  
   installing software, 252  
   responsibilities, 202-203  
   superusers, *see* superusers  
   user ID assignments, 324  
   *see also* network administrators  
 system architectures (Hardware  
 Compatibility HOWTO), 698  
 system command, 543  
 System Utilities option (Red  
 Hat Start menu), 183  
 System V, Release 4.2, 15

## T

-t fs-type command-line  
 argument (fsck), 275  
 -t fs-type command-  
 line parameter (mkfs  
 command), 283  
 -t argument  
   dip command, 506  
   nstat program, 484  
 t command (fdisk program),  
 56, 93  
 -t flag, 337  
   ls command, 304  
 -t num option (chat program),  
 513  
 t option (tar utility), 231  
 t4693d2 printer, 437  
 t4693d4 printer, 437  
 t4693d8 printer, 438  
 tables, partition, 47, 57-58,  
 83, 93-95  
 tags (HTML), 613  
   <ADDRESS>, 619  
   <B>, 618  
   <BLOCKQUOTE>, 618  
   <BODY>, 615  
   <DL>, 621, 623  
   document, 614-615  
   <DT>, 621  
   <EM>, 618-619  
   <FONT>, 619  
   formatting text, 618-619  
   <HEAD>, 615  
   <HR>, 616  
   HTML, 612  
   <HTML>, 614  
   <I>, 619  
   <IMG>, 625  
   <KBD>, 619  
   lists, 623  
   <OL>, 623  
   <P>, 616  
   <PRE>, 617, 619  
   <STRIKE>, 619  
   <STRONG>, 618-619  
   <TITLE>, 612-613  
   <U>, 618-619  
   <UL>, 623  
 talk newsgroups, 597  
 tan function, 189  
 Tannebaum, Andrew (creator  
 of minix), 21  
 tape drives (Hardware  
 Compatability HOWTO),  
 42-43, 712  
 .tar extension, 561  
 tar utility  
   backups, 231-233  
   commands, 231-233  
 -target\_dir dir argument, 253  
 tasks, *see* processes  
 TCP (Transmission Control  
 Protocol), 455, 458  
 TCP/IP (Transmission Control  
 Protocol/Internet Protocol),  
 27, 453

history, 454  
 networking  
   configuration files, 65,  
   474-475  
   displaying active  
   connections, 484-487  
   displaying network interface  
   statistics, 487-488  
   /etc/hosts file, 474-475  
   /etc/networks file, 475  
   kernel routing table, 487  
   monitoring networks with  
   nstat program, 483-488  
 routing  
   deciding on policy, 479  
   /sbin/route program,  
   479-484  
   stack, 458-459  
 technical support,  
 disadvantages of Linux, 30  
 tek4696 printer, 438  
 Tektronix 4014 terminals, 186  
 telnet, 455, 564-565  
   command  
     command-line  
       arguments, 538  
       remote logins, 538-539  
       sessions, 539  
       syntax, 538  
     configuring Netscape Navigator  
       to work with, 564-565  
     starting, 564  
     URLs, 557  
 temporary files, 264  
 tenex command, 543  
 term command, 508  
 Term Firewall mini-HOWTO,  
 694  
 Term HOWTO, 690  
 TERM variable, 333-334  
 TERM=termtype variable, 331  
 terminal emulation (Seyon  
 application), 193  
 terminal environment, 327  
 terminals  
   centralized processing  
   models, 205  
   dumb, 205  
   preventing idle terminals, 246  
   smart, 205  
   Tektronix 4014, 186  
   vt102, 186  
 terminating commands, 344  
 test command, shell  
 programming, 358-360

- test flag, 80
  - testing accounts, 122
  - Tetris, 137
  - text
    - adding to commands, 349
    - emacs editor
      - adding to editing buffer, 426
      - copying, 430
      - cutting, 430
      - deleting, 426-427
      - editing, 429
      - pasting, 430
      - replacing, 428-429
    - formatting Web pages, 615-619
    - selecting, 119
    - vi editor
      - adding to editing buffer, 403-405
      - copying, 408-410
      - cutting, 408-410
      - deleting, 405-406
      - editing, 391-393, 406-407
      - pasting, 408-410
      - replacing, 406-407
  - text.gz file, 81
  - Thompson, Ken (program developer), 21
  - TI emulation, xcalc application, 189-190
  - TIA mini-HOWTO, 694
  - tick command, 543
  - tilde (~) character, 120, 393
    - commands, 575
  - time
    - argument, 218
    - configuring, 65
  - TIME field
    - ps command, 380
    - who command, 378
  - time stamps, 315
  - time zones, selecting, 111-115
  - time-field options (crontab command), 376
  - time-sharing, 368
  - timeo=n NFS mount option, 273
  - Timeout directive, 666
  - timeout num command, 508
  - Tiny News mini-HOWTO, 694
  - Tips HOWTO, 690
  - title bars (twm window manager), 179
  - <TITLE> tag, 612-613
  - /tmp directory, 264
    - UNIX, 297
  - ToCommand output option (xgrab application), 195
  - toggle options, setting
    - environment options for vi editor, 412
  - Token Ring
    - adapters, 709
    - mini-HOWTO, 694
  - tools, application
    - development, 28
  - topologies, 207-209
    - bus, 208-211
    - hybrid, 209
    - ring, 209-211
    - star, 208
  - Torvalds, Linus (creator of Linux), 23
  - touch command, flags, 315
  - trace command, 543
  - training system administrators, 213-214
  - transferring files
    - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 540-549
      - anonymous FTP, 540
      - changing file transfer mode, 545
      - checking transfer status, 545-553
      - ftp commands, 541-545
      - troubleshooting, 549
  - translation modes (Seyon application), 194
  - translations, HOWTOs, 686
  - Transmission Control Protocol, see TCP, 455
  - Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol, see TCP/IP
  - Transport layer (OSI model), 457-458
  - trantor.s file, 79
  - Trek, 138-139
  - trim option (/etc/host.conf file configuration), 492
  - trn news reader, 604
  - troubleshooting
    - anonymous FTP, 549
    - at command, 377
    - crontab command, 377
    - DNS (Domain Name Service), 502-503
    - emacs editor, 419
      - editing files, 419
      - file names, 419
      - opening files, 420
      - searching, 428
    - file transfers, 549
    - Linux system setup, 71-72, 115
    - now command, 377
    - printers, 447-448
    - printing
      - error messages, 447
      - output, 447
    - software, installing, 256
    - vi editor
      - editing files, 396
      - file names, 395
      - opening files, 396
      - searching, 408
      - starting, 393
      - TERM variable, 392
  - ttl field, 496
  - tty command, 292
  - tty devices, names, 292
  - TTY field (ps command), 380
  - tutorial (emacs editor), starting, 417
  - twm window manager (X Windows), 179-180
  - two-character (>>) symbol, appending to files, 342
  - txx flag (ps command), 381
  - type command, 543
  - Type field, 267, 486, 497
  - typing in input mode (vi editor), 403
  - TZ variable, 333-334
- ## U
- u argument (nstat program), 484
  - u command (fdisk program), 56, 93
  - u flag
    - ls command, 304
    - ps command, 381

- <U> tag, 618-619
- U.S. Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), 524
- U.S. domains, 526
- UDP (User Datagram Protocol), 455, 458
- UID option (Add User dialog box), 125
- <UL> tag, 623
- ultrastr.s file, 79
- umask command, 543
- umount command, unmounting file systems, 269-270
- UMSDOS, 88-89
  - installing, 89
  - repartitioning hard drives, 86
- UMSDOS HOWTO, 690
- umsdos.gz file, 81
- uncompress command, 254
- Undefined error occurred error, 82
- undeleting e-mail, 580-581
- undo command (vi editor), 398
- undoing commands
  - emacs editor, 422
  - vi editor, 398-399
- Uniform Resource Locators, *see* URLs
- uninstalling LILO, 109-111
  - configuring networks, 109-110
  - configuring sendmail, 110-111
  - replacing /etc/fstab file, 111-115
  - selecting time zone, 111-115
  - selection program, 110
- unintelligent controllers (Hardware Compatability HOWTO), 706-707
- uninterruptible power supply, *see* UPSs
- UNIX
  - Active UNIX Domain Sockets fields, 485-486
  - communications, 19-20
  - conventions, 214
  - defined, 13
  - device independence, 19
  - directories, 297-298
  - multitasking, 16-17
  - multiuser feature, 17
  - portability, 20-21
  - printing, 438-439
    - applications, 439-441
  - shell programming, 18-19
  - versions, 15
  - vi editor, 390-393
  - XENIX, 22-23
- UNIX System Laboratories (USL), 22
- UNIX-to-UNIX Copy Program (UUCP) protocol, 596
- unmounting file systems, 269-270
- unordered lists, displaying, 619
- Unsupported track error, 82
- up argument, 476
- Upgrade mini-HOWTO, 694
- upgrading
  - Slackware, 114
  - software
    - backups, 251
    - considerations, 250-251
    - kernels, 256-257
    - network administrator responsibilities, 213
- UPS HOWTO, 690
- UPSs (uninterruptible power supply), Hardware Compatability HOWTO, 717
- URLs (Uniform Resource Locators), 557-558, 614
  - access methods, 557
- us domain, 526
- us value, Usenet news, 598
- Use field, 480
- Usenet news, 593
  - accessing with Web browsers, 566
  - central authority, 599
  - culture, 599-601
  - culture of newsgroups, 600-601
  - defined, 594
  - emoticons, 600
  - history, 596-597
  - kill files, 604
  - Linux resources, 678-680
  - netiquette, 603-604
  - news readers
    - rn news reader, 604-605
    - trn, 604
  - posting articles to, 602-603
  - reading news, 601-602
  - replying to newsgroups, 602
  - structure, 597-598
    - hierarchies, 597-598
    - news distributions, 598
  - subscribing to newsgroups, 601
  - terminology, 594-596
- user authentication, Apache, 661-662
- user command, 543
- User Datagram Protocol, *see* UDP
- user directories, 649-650
- User field, 485
- user IDs, 324
- user interfaces (X Windows), 162
- user names, 118
  - length, 120
- user\_ID field, 222
- user\_information field, 222
- Username option (Add User dialog box), 125
- users
  - adding, 222
    - adduser command, 223
    - Red Hat, 123
    - Slackware, 120-123
  - groups, 225
  - IDs, switching, 244-245
  - login names, 222
  - managing
    - adding under Slackware, 120-123
    - adding with Red Hat, 123
    - logging in/out, 119-120
    - Red Hat Control Panel, 124-125
  - passwords, 222
    - setting, 223-224
  - removing, 224-225
- USL (UNIX System Laboratories), 22
- /usr directory, 264
  - subdirectories, 264-265
  - UNIX, 298
- usr file system, 262
- /usr/adm directory (UNIX), 298
- /usr/lib directory (UNIX), 298
- /usr/spool directory (UNIX), 298
- ustor14f.s file, 79

**utilities**

- nslookup
  - finding host information, 535
  - search information, 535
- tar
  - backups, 231-233
  - commands, 231-233
- whois, finding host information, 533-534
  - see also* applications

**Utilities option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**

**UUCP (UNIX-to-UNIX Copy Program) protocol, 596**

**UUCP HOWTO, 690**

**V**

**-V command-line argument (fsck), 275**

**-V command-line parameter (mkfs command), 283**

- v argument**
  - dip command, 506
  - nestat program, 484

**v command (fdisk program), 57, 93**

**-v flag (ps command), 381**

**-v option (chat program), 513**

**v option (tar utility), 231-232**

**/var directory, 264**

**variables**

- Bourne shell, 331
- dip command, 509
- exporting to new shells, 362-364
- HOME, 332-333
- LogFormat directive, 654-655
- LOGNAME, 332, 334-353
- MAIL, 332, 334
- PATH, 331-334
- PS1, 333-334
- SECONDS, 333
- setting in shell environment, 330
- SHELL, 332
- shell, 332-335
  - substituting, 342-343
- shell scripts, 352-355
  - command-line parameters, 354
  - direct assignments, 353
  - read command, 353
  - substituting command output, 354-355

TERM, 333-334  
TZ, 333-334

- verbose**
  - command, 543
  - flag, 80

**verifying accounts, 122**

**Verisign Web site, 639**

**version flag, 80**

**VESA Local Bus (VLB) bus, 699**

- vi editor, 213, 389-393**
    - adding text to buffer, 403-405
    - command mode, 393
    - copying text, 408-410
    - creating vi files, 394-395
    - cutting text, 408-410
    - defined, 390-391
    - deleting text, 405-406
    - editing process, 391-393, 406-407
    - exiting, 396-397
    - input mode, 394, 403
    - pasting text, 408-410
    - positioning cursor, 401-402
      - arrow keys, 400
      - big-movement keys, 402
    - repeating commands, 410
    - replacing text, 406-407
    - saving
      - buffer, 399-400
      - files, 399
    - searching, 407-408
    - setting environment options, 410-413
      - customizing vi sessions, 412-413
      - set command, 411-412
      - showmode option, 412
      - toggle options, 412
    - starting, 393
      - from existing file, 395-396
  - troubleshooting
    - editing files, 396
    - file names, 395
    - opening files, 396
    - searching, 408
    - starting, 393
    - TERM variable, 392
    - undoing commands, 398-399
    - writing files, 399-400
- video capture boards (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 717**
- video cards (Hardware Compatibility HOWTO), 700-703**
  - diamond, 701
  - monochrome, 702

SVGALIB, 701

XFree86 3.1.1, Unaccelerated, 702

XFree86 3.1.2, Accelerated, 701-702

**viewing**

- command history, 348
- file content, 309-313
  - cat command, 310
  - escaping to shell, 311
  - formats, 311-313
  - less command, 310
  - more command, 310
  - HTML source code, 613

**virtual desktops (fvwm window manager), 180-181**

**virtual hosts ((Apache), 663-664**

- virtual memory**
  - swap files, 284-285
  - swap partitions, 284-285

**virtual terminal, *see* VT**

**virtual terminals, navigating X Windows, 178**

**Virtual Web mini-HOWTO, 694**

**Virtual wu-ftpd mini-HOWTO, 694**

**VisiCalc, 134**

**Visual Bell mini-HOWTO, 694**

**VLB (VESA Local Bus) bus, 699**

**VT (virtual terminal), 455**

**vt102 terminals, 186**

**W**

**:w (write) command, saving files, 399**

**-w argument (nestat program), 484**

**w command, 369**

- fdisk program, 57, 93

**-w flag (ps command), 381**

**WABI (Windows Applications Binary Interface), 31**

**wais (URLs), 557**

**WAIS (Wide Area Information Servers), 567**

**wait word num command, 508**

**warn option (vi environment setting), 411**

- Web browsers, 557**
  - accessing Usenet news, 566
  - archie, 562-564
  - FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 560-561
  - gopher, 565-566
  - Internet Explorer (Microsoft), 557
  - Navigator (Netscape), 557
    - configuring to work with telnet, 564-565
    - telnet, 564-565
- Web pages**
  - formatting text, 615-619
    - headings, 615-616
    - HTML tags, 618-619
  - home pages, *see* home pages
  - HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 610
    - attributes, 614
    - editors, 610-613
    - graphics, 625-627
    - organizing lists of information, 619-623
    - source code, 613
    - tags, 612-613
    - URLs (Uniform Resource Locators), 614
  - hypertext links, graphics, 625
  - linking with anchors, 623-624
- Web, *see* WWW (World Wide Web)**
- Web servers, 556**
  - Apache
    - automating logfile rotation, 671-672
    - compiling, 630-631
    - configuring, 642-650
    - controlling server child processes, 668-669
    - editing Configuration file, 630-631
    - host-based access control, 660-661
    - increasing performance, 670-671
    - make command, 631
    - running configure script, 631
  - archie, 562-563
  - security
    - CGI scripts, 672-673
    - publicly writable spaces, 674
- Web sites, 682**
  - adapters supported by Linux, 707-710
  - Alta Vista, 558, 673
  - AOLpress, 611
  - Caldera, 33
  - European Linux, 682
  - Excite, 559
  - HotBot, 559
  - Inference Find!, 559
  - Infoseek, 559
  - Internet Assigned Numbers Authority, 644
  - laptops supported by Linux, 699-700
  - Linux Documentation Project, 682
  - Linux International, 682
  - Linux Journal, 681
  - Linux Organization, 682
  - Linux Source Navigator, 682
  - Lycos, 559
  - Open Text Index, 559
  - Que Publishing, 682
  - Que's *HTML Quick Reference*, 614
  - RSA Data Security, Inc., 638
  - Search.Com, 559
  - security
    - CGI scripts, 672-673
    - server-includes, 673
    - symbolic links, 673-674
  - Software Homesite, 611
  - SSLeay library, 639
  - system architectures for
    - Hardware Compatibility HOWTO, 698
  - Verisign, 639
  - Yahoo!, 558, 682
- which.one file, 76**
- while loop, repeating commands, 361-362**
- who command, 369**
  - finding login names, 378-379
  - output formats, 378-379
- whois utility, finding host information, 533-534**
- Wide Area Information Servers, *see* WAIS**
- wild cards, 338**
  - \* (asterisk), 339-340
  - ? (question mark), 340
  - [] (square brackets), 340-341
- Win95+Win+Linux mini-HOWTO, 694**
- window managers (X Windows), 178-181**
  - fvwm, 180-181
  - olwm, 181
  - twm, 179-180
- Window Operations option (Red Hat Start menu), 183**
- Windows, running applications under Linux, 157-158**
- windows**
  - sizing, twm window manager, 179
  - sticky, 181
- Windows Applications Binary Interface (WABI), 31**
- Windows Emulator, *see* Wine**
- Wine (WINDows Emulator), running Windows applications under Linux, 157-158**
- wm-n option (vi environment setting), 411**
- WordPerfect mini-HOWTO, 694**
- workbone CD player, 133**
- workstations, distributed processing models, 207**
- world value, Usenet news, 598**
- World Wide Web, *see* WWW**
- write command, variations of, 399**
- Write fault occurred error, 82**
- writing**
  - e-mail, while sending
    - e-mail, 573
  - files
    - emacs editor, 423-430
    - vi editor, 399-400
  - HOWTOs, 695
- ws option (vi environment setting), 411**
- wsize-n NFS mount option, 273**
- WWW (World Wide Web), 555-560**
  - accessing, 557
  - history, 556
  - HOWTO, 690
  - hypertext links, 556
  - searching, 558-560
    - archie, 562-564
    - gopher, 565-566
    - telnet, 564-565
  - structure, 556-557
  - URLs, 557-558

---

**X**

- x argument**
  - netstat program, 484
  - rcp command, 552
- X Big Cursor mini-HOWTO, 694**
- x command (fdisk program), 57, 93**
- X Consortium, 160, 162**

- x flag
  - ls command, 304
  - ps command, 381
- X Notebook mini-HOWTO, 694**
- x option
  - rlogin command, 550
  - rsh command, 551
- x option (tar utility), 231**
- X Windows, 159-163**
  - applications, 161
    - nxterm, 183
    - Red Hat, 181-185
    - Seyon, 192-194
    - Slackware 96, 185-195
    - xcalc, 188-191
    - xgrab, 194-195
    - xlock, 195
    - xspread, 191-192
    - xterm, 186-188
    - xv, 183-185
  - client/server components, 161-162
  - input capabilities, 163
  - installing with pkgtool, 166-167
  - navigating, 178
  - output capabilities, 162
  - resource files, 175
  - user interface capabilities, 162
  - window managers, 178-181
    - fvwm, 180-181
    - olwm, 181
    - twm, 179-180
  - X Consortium, 162
- x! function, 190**
- xy function, 191**
- x^2 function, 189**
- xbiff application, 181**
- xcalc application, 188-191**
- HP emulation, 190-191
- TI emulation, 189-190
- Xconfig file, 168**
- XENIX (Microsoft), 22-23**
- Xerox Network Systems (XNS), 465**
- XF86Config file, 169-174**
  - Device section, 173-174
  - Files section, 170
  - Keyboard section, 170-171
  - Monitor section, 172-173
  - Pointer section, 171-172
  - running, 174-175
  - Screen section, 174
  - ServerFlags section, 170
- XFree86, 27, 159-160**
  - chipsets supported by, 165-166
  - configuring, 167-175
    - running SuperProbe, 168-169
    - running X-in probeonly mode, 175
    - running XF86Config file, 174-175
  - XF86Config file, 169-174
  - distribution files, 164-165
  - GUI, 316-320
    - copying files, 319
    - displaying files, 318
    - moving files, 319
    - naming files, 319
    - removing files, 319-320
  - installing, 163-167
    - hardware support, 165-166
    - software, 163-165
- XFree86 3.1.1, Unaccelerated video cards, 702**
- XFree86 3.1.2, Accelerated video cards, 701-702**
- XFree86 HOWTO, 690**
- XFree86-XInside mini-HOWTO, 694**
- xgrab application, 194-195**
  - resources, 195-197
  - ToCommand output option, 195
- xlock application, 195**
- XNS (Xerox Network Systems), 465**
- xonxoff option (pppd command), 516**
- xspread application, 191-192**
- xt.i file, 77**
- xterm application, 186-188**
  - \$TERMCAP entries, 186-187
  - features, 187
  - mouse usage, 187-188
- xterm Title mini-HOWTO, 694**
- Xterminal mini-HOWTO, 694**
- xv application, 183-185**

---

## Y-Z

- y^x function, 189**
- Yahoo! Web site, 558, 682**
- z argument (file command), 290**
- .Z extension, 561**
- Z option (tar utility), 231**
- zcat command, 316**
- ZIP Drive mini-HOWTO, 694**
- .zip extension, 561**

*Special Edition*

# USING LINUX

Third Edition

*The secrets to unleashing the full power of Linux—at your fingertips!*

Que's *Special Edition Using Linux, Third Edition* is your all-in-one resource for installing, configuring, and working with this powerful operating system. From running Linux applications and backing up data to configuring a TCP/IP network, using email, and creating your own HTML page, you'll find all the information you need to master the power of Linux!

**Jack Tackett Jr.** is a freelance writer and computer consultant based in RTP, NC. He specializes in C/C++ and client/server applications for various high-tech firms. He is also a columnist for Newbridge Communication's Tech Talk newsletter. Currently he is a Linux consultant for Nortel's Information Network group in RTP.

**David Gunter** is an information technology consultant and computer author based in Cary, NC. In addition to software development, he has been involved with supporting and managing diverse systems and networks for over 10 years.

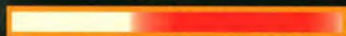


CD-ROMs include:

Red Hat™, Slackware, and Caldera's Open Linux Lite, three complete distributions of the 32-bit Linux operating system. Plus, the HTML version of Que's *Running a Perfect Web Site with Apache*.

◀ See inside Gatefold for more detailed information!

User Level



New Casual Accomplished Expert

Category: Operating System

Covers: Red Hat and Slackware, Caldera, Open Linux

**que**®

Visit us on the Internet at: <http://www.quecorp.com>

- Learn how to install Red Hat Linux on various DEC Alpha platforms
- Install and configure the XFree86 windowing system, and get X Windows resource files
- Learn the Linux file and directory structure and how to move within it
- Maneuver through Linux and manage users with basic commands
- Learn how to get Apache, the world's most popular Linux Web server, up and running
- Make the most of your Internet connection by accessing Usenet news and email
- Explore the power of shells; understand, optimize and customize your Linux shell
- Receive tips for installing and using the X-based GUI included with Linux



If you are not completely satisfied, you can return this product for a full refund. Call 1-800-858-7674

\$59.99 USA / \$84.95 CAN / £56.49 Net UK (inc of VAT)



0 29236 11321 6



ISBN 0-7897-1132-X

9 5 9 9 9

9 780789 711328